

---

# MUTSHO SOLAR PV4, LIMPOPO PROVINCE

---

## ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME

January 2023

**Prepared for:**

Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd  
9 Carmel  
Gateside Avenue  
Dainfern Golf Estate  
Dainfern  
2055

**Prepared by:**

**Savannah Environmental (Pty) Ltd**

First Floor, Block 2, 5 Woodlands Drive Office Park  
Woodmead  
Johannesburg, 2191  
Tel: +27 (0)11 656 3237  
Fax: +27 (0)86 684 0547  
E-mail: [info@savannahsa.com](mailto:info@savannahsa.com)  
[www.savannahsa.com](http://www.savannahsa.com)



## EMPR DETAILS

---

<b>DFFE Reference No.</b>	:	14/12/16/3/3/2/2183
<b>Title</b>	:	Environmental Management Programme: Mutsho Solar PV4, Limpopo Province
<b>Authors</b>	:	Savannah Environmental (Pty) Ltd Chantelle Geyer Jo-Anne Thomas
<b>Specialists</b>	:	The Biodiversity Company CTS Heritage Environmental Planning and Design Urban-Econ
<b>Client</b>	:	Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd
<b>Report Status</b>	:	Environmental Management Programme submitted as part of the Environmental Impact Assessment Report for a 30-day review period
<b>Date</b>	:	January 2023

**When used as a reference this report should be cited as:** Savannah Environmental (2023) Environmental Management Programme: Mutsho Solar PV4, Limpopo Province

**COPYRIGHT RESERVED**

This technical report has been produced by Savannah Environmental (Pty) Ltd for Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd. No part of the report may be copied, reproduced or used in any manner without written permission from Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd or Savannah Environmental (Pty) Ltd.

## DEFINITIONS AND TERMINOLOGY

---

**Alien species:** A species that is not indigenous to the area or out of its natural distribution range.

**Alternatives:** Alternatives are different means of meeting the general purpose and need of a proposed activity. Alternatives may include location or site alternatives, activity alternatives, process, or technology alternatives, temporal alternatives or the 'do nothing' alternative.

**Ambient sound level:** The reading on an integrating impulse sound level meter taken at a measuring point in the absence of any alleged disturbing noise at the end of a total period of at least 10 minutes after such meter was put into operation.

**Assessment:** The process of collecting, organising, analysing, interpreting and communicating information which is relevant.

**Biological diversity:** The variables among living organisms from all sources including, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and the ecological complexes they belong to.

**Commence:** The start of any physical activity, including site preparation and any other activity on site furtherance of a listed activity or specified activity, but does not include any activity required for the purposes of an investigation or feasibility study as long as such investigation or feasibility study does not constitute a listed activity or specified activity.

**Construction:** Construction means the building, erection or establishment of a facility, structure or infrastructure that is necessary for the undertaking of a listed or specified activity as per the EIA Regulations. Construction begins with any activity which requires Environmental Authorisation.

**Cumulative impacts:** Impacts that result from the incremental impact of the proposed activity on a common resource when added to the impacts of other past, present or reasonably foreseeable future activities (e.g. discharges of nutrients and heated water to a river that combine to cause algal bloom and subsequent loss of dissolved oxygen that is greater than the additive impacts of each pollutant). Cumulative impacts can occur from the collective impacts of individual minor actions over a period and can include both direct and indirect impacts.

**Decommissioning:** To take out of active service permanently or dismantle partly or wholly, or closure of a facility to the extent that it cannot be readily re-commissioned. This usually occurs at the end of the life of a facility.

**Direct impacts:** Impacts that are caused directly by the activity and generally occur at the same time and at the place of the activity (e.g. noise generated by blasting operations on the site of the activity). These impacts are usually associated with the construction, operation, or maintenance of an activity and are generally obvious and quantifiable.

**'Do nothing' alternative:** The 'do nothing' alternative is the option of not undertaking the proposed activity or any of its alternatives. The 'do nothing' alternative also provides the baseline against which the impacts of other alternatives should be compared.

**Ecosystem:** A dynamic system of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit.

**Endangered species:** Taxa in danger of extinction and whose survival is unlikely if the causal factors continue operating. Included here are taxa whose numbers of individuals have been reduced to a critical level or whose habitats have been so drastically reduced that they are deemed to be in immediate danger of extinction.

**Endemic:** An "endemic" is a species that grows/occur in a particular area (is endemic to that region) and has a restricted distribution. It is only found in a particular place. Whether something is endemic or not depends on the geographical boundaries of the area in question and the area can be defined at different scales.

**Environment:** the surroundings within which humans exist and that are made up of:

- (i) The land, water and atmosphere of the earth;
- (ii) Micro-organisms, plant and animal life;
- (iii) Any part or combination of (i) and (ii) and the interrelationships among and between them; and
- (iv) The physical, chemical, aesthetic and cultural properties and conditions of the foregoing that influence human health and well-being.

**Environmental assessment practitioner (EAP):** An individual responsible for the planning, management and coordinating of environmental management plan or any other appropriate environmental instruments introduced by legislation.

**Environmental impact:** An action or series of actions that have an effect on the environment.

**Environmental impact assessment:** Environmental Impact Assessment, as defined in the NEMA EIA Regulations, is a systematic process of identifying, assessing and reporting environmental impacts associated with an activity.

**Environmental management:** Ensuring that environmental concerns are included in all stages of development, so that development is sustainable and does not exceed the carrying capacity of the environment.

**Environmental management programme:** A plan that organises and co-ordinates mitigation, rehabilitation and monitoring measures in order to guide the implementation of a proposal and its on-going maintenance after implementation.

**Habitat:** The place in which a species or ecological community occurs naturally.

**Hazardous waste:** Any waste that contains organic or inorganic elements or compounds that may, owing to the inherent physical, chemical or toxicological characteristics of that waste, have a detrimental impact on health and the environment.

**Incident:** Section 30 of NEMA defines an 'incident' as "an unexpected sudden occurrence, including a major emission, fire or explosion leading to serious danger to the public or potentially serious pollution of or detriment to the environment, whether immediate or delayed."<sup>1</sup>

**Indigenous:** All biological organisms that occurred naturally within the study area prior to 1800.

**Indirect impacts:** Indirect or induced changes that may occur because of the activity (e.g. the reduction of water in a stream that supply water to a reservoir that supply water to the activity). These types of impacts include all the potential impacts that do not manifest immediately when the activity is undertaken or which occur at a different place because of the activity.

**Interested and affected party:** Individuals or groups concerned with or affected by an activity and its consequences. These include the authorities, local communities, investors, work force, consumers, environmental interest groups, and the public.

**Mitigation hierarchy:** The mitigation hierarchy is a framework for managing risks and potential impacts related to biodiversity and ecosystem services. The mitigation hierarchy is used when planning and implementing development projects, to provide a logical and effective approach to protecting and conserving biodiversity and maintaining important ecosystem services. It is a tool to aid in the sustainable management of living, natural resources, which provides a mechanism for making explicit decisions that balance conservation needs with development priorities

**Pollution:** A change in the environment caused by substances (radio-active or other waves, noise, odours, dust or heat emitted from any activity, including the storage or treatment or waste or substances.

**Pre-construction:** The period prior to the commencement of construction, which may include activities which do not require Environmental Authorisation (e.g. geotechnical surveys).

**Rare species:** Taxa with small world populations that are not at present Endangered or Vulnerable but are at risk as some unexpected threat could easily cause a critical decline. These taxa are usually localised within restricted geographical areas or habitats or are thinly scattered over a more extensive range. This category was termed Critically Rare by Hall and Veldhuis (1985) to distinguish it from the more generally used word "rare."

**Red data species:** Species listed in terms of the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN) Red List of Threatened Species, and/or in terms of the South African Red Data list. In terms of the South African Red Data list, species are classified as being extinct, endangered, vulnerable, rare, indeterminate, insufficiently known or not threatened (see other definitions within this glossary).

**Significant impact:** An impact that by its magnitude, duration, intensity, or probability of occurrence may have a notable effect on one or more aspects of the environment.

**Waste:** Any substance, material or object, that is unwanted, rejected, abandoned, discarded or disposed of, or that is intended or required to be discarded or disposed of, by the holder of that substance, material

---

<sup>1</sup><http://ipwis.pgwc.gov.za/ipwisdoc/Public/Publications/ChemicalsMgt/A%20Procedure%20for%20Section%2030%20of%20NEMA.pdf>

or object, whether or not such substance, material or object can be re-used, recycled or recovered and includes all wastes as defined in Schedule 3 to the Waste Amendment Act (as amended on June 2014); or any other substance, material or object that is not included in Schedule 3 that may be defined as a waste by the Minister.

## ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

---

DFFE	National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
DWS	Department of Water and Sanitation
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
ECO	Environmental Control Officer
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme
EO	Environmental Officer
EPC	Engineering Procurement Contractor
GG	Government Gazette
GN	Government Notice
Ha	Hectare
I&AP	Interested and Affected Party
km <sup>2</sup>	Square kilometres
kV	Kilovolt
m <sup>2</sup>	Square meters
m/s	Meters per second
MW	Mega Watt
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act (Act No 107 of 1998)
NHRA	National Heritage Resources Act (Act No 25 of 1999)
NIRP	National Integrated Resource Planning
NWA	National Water Act (Act No 36 of 1998)
PM	Project Manager
PV	Photovoltaic
SHE	Safety, Health and Environment
SAHRA	South African Heritage Resources Agency
SANRAL	South African National Roads Agency Limited

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
<b>EMPR DETAILS</b> .....	<b>i</b>
<b>DEFINITIONS AND TERMINOLOGY</b> .....	<b>ii</b>
<b>ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS</b> .....	<b>vi</b>
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS</b> .....	<b>vii</b>
<b>APPENDICES</b> .....	<b>x</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2: PROJECT DETAILS</b> .....	<b>2</b>
2.1. Components of Mutsho Solar PV4.....	4
2.2. Activities and Components associated with Mutsho Solar PV4 .....	6
2.3. Findings of the EIA Report.....	10
2.3.1. Impacts on Terrestrial Ecology (including flora and fauna) and Freshwater Ecology .....	10
2.3.2. Impacts on Avifauna .....	13
2.3.3. Impacts on Soils and Agricultural Potential.....	13
2.3.4. Impacts on Heritage Resources (archaeology, palaeontology and cultural landscape) .....	14
2.3.5. Visual Impacts .....	14
2.3.6. Socio-Economic Impacts .....	15
2.3.8. Assessment of Cumulative Impacts .....	16
2.3.9. Assessment of No-go Alternative.....	18
2.3.10. Assessment of the Facility Layout .....	18
2.3.11. Environmental Costs versus Benefits of Mutsho Solar PV4 .....	19
2.3.12. Overall Conclusion (Impact Statement) .....	21
2.3.13. Overall Recommendation .....	22
<b>CHAPTER 3: PURPOSE AND OBJECTIVES OF THE EMPR</b> .....	<b>24</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4: STRUCTURE OF THIS EMPr</b> .....	<b>26</b>
4.1. Project Team .....	27
<b>CHAPTER 5: ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES</b> .....	<b>29</b>
OBJECTIVE 1: Establish clear reporting, communication, and responsibilities during construction in relation to the overall implementation of the EMPr.....	29
OBJECTIVE 2: Establish clear reporting, communication, and responsibilities during operation in relation to overall implementation of the EMPr during operation.....	32
<b>CHAPTER 6: MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME: PLANNING AND DESIGN</b> .....	<b>34</b>
6.1. Objectives .....	34
OBJECTIVE 1: To ensure that the design of the facility responds to the identified environmental constraints and opportunities .....	34
OBJECTIVE 2: Ensure that relevant permits and site-specific plans are in place to manage impacts on the environment .....	36
OBJECTIVE 3: Ensure compliance of required mitigation measures and recommendations by contractors .....	38
OBJECTIVE 4: To ensure effective communication mechanisms .....	39
<b>CHAPTER 7: MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME: CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	<b>41</b>
7.1. Objectives .....	41
OBJECTIVE 1: Securing the site and site establishment .....	41
OBJECTIVE 2: Appropriate management of the construction site and construction workers .....	43



OBJECTIVE 3: Maximise benefits and opportunities associated with the construction phase .....	45
OBJECTIVE 4: Control of noise pollution stemming from construction activities .....	46
OBJECTIVE 5: Management of dust and emissions and damage to roads .....	47
OBJECTIVE 6: Conservation of the existing soil resource within the site and in the adjacent areas .....	48
OBJECTIVE 7: Minimise impacts on sensitive areas and plant species .....	52
OBJECTIVE 8: Protection of terrestrial fauna .....	55
OBJECTIVE 9: Protection of avifauna.....	56
OBJECTIVE 10: Minimise impacts on heritage sites during the construction of the solar facility .....	59
OBJECTIVE 11: Minimisation of visual impacts associated with construction .....	61
OBJECTIVE 12: Appropriate handling and management of waste .....	62
OBJECTIVE 13: Appropriate handling and storage of chemicals, hazardous substances .....	65
OBJECTIVE 14: Traffic management and transportation of equipment and materials to site .....	67
OBJECTIVE 15: Ensure appropriate rehabilitation of disturbed areas such that residual environmental impacts are remediated or curtailed.....	69
7.2. Detailing Method Statements.....	71
OBJECTIVE 16: Ensure all construction activities are undertaken with the appropriate level of environmental awareness to minimise environmental risk.....	71
7.3. Awareness and Competence: Construction Phase of Mutsho Solar PV4.....	73
OBJECTIVE 17: To ensure all construction personnel have the appropriate level of environmental awareness and competence to ensure continued environmental due diligence and on-going minimisation of environmental harm .....	73
7.4. Monitoring Programme: Construction Phase of Mutsho Solar PV4 .....	75
OBJECTIVE 18: To monitor the performance of the control strategies employed against environmental objectives and standards .....	75
<b>CHAPTER 8: MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME: OPERATION .....</b>	<b>77</b>
8.1. Objectives .....	77
OBJECTIVE 1: Securing the site and general maintenance during operation .....	77
OBJECTIVE 2: Protection of indigenous natural vegetation, fauna and maintenance of rehabilitation .....	78
OBJECTIVE 3: Protection of avifauna.....	81
OBJECTIVE 5: Minimisation of visual impact.....	82
OBJECTIVE 6: Ensure appropriate operation and maintenance of the battery energy storage system .....	83
OBJECTIVE 7: Appropriate management of stormwater and erosion control.....	85
OBJECTIVE 8: Appropriate handling and management of hazardous substances and waste .....	86
OBJECTIVE 9: Maximise benefits and opportunities for local communities associated with the operation of the solar facility .....	88
OBJECTIVE 10: Implement an appropriate fire management plan during the operation phase .....	88
OBJECTIVE 11: Ensure appropriate operation and maintenance of the battery energy storage system ...	89
8.2. Monitoring Programme: Operation Phase of Mutsho Solar PV4.....	90
OBJECTIVE 12: To monitor the performance of the control strategies employed against environmental objectives and standards .....	90
<b>CHAPTER 9: MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME: DECOMMISSIONING .....</b>	<b>92</b>
9.1. Objectives .....	92
9.2. Approach to the Decommissioning Phase.....	93
9.2.1. Identification of structures for post-closure use .....	94
9.2.2. Removal of infrastructure .....	94
9.2.3. Soil rehabilitation .....	94
9.2.4. Establishment of vegetation .....	94

9.2.5.	Maintenance .....	94
9.2.6.	Monitoring .....	94

## APPENDICES

---

- Appendix A:** Curriculum Vitae of the Project Team
- Appendix B:** Grievance Mechanism for Public Complaints and Issues
- Appendix C:** Open Space Management Plan
- Appendix D:** Re-Vegetation and Habitat Rehabilitation Plan
- Appendix E:** Plant Rescue and Protection Plan
- Appendix F:** Traffic and Transportation Management Plan
- Appendix G:** Stormwater and Erosion Management Plan
- Appendix H:** Waste Management Plan
- Appendix I:** Emergency Preparedness, Response and Fire Management Plan
- Appendix J:** Chance Find Procedure

## CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

---

This Environmental Management Programme has been compiled for Mutsho Solar PV4. The project is to be developed on a site located approximately 8km south-west of Mopane and 39km south-west of Musina, within the Musina Local Municipality and the Vhembe District Municipality in the Limpopo Province. Mutsho Solar PV4 will have a contracted capacity of up to 100MW and is to be constructed over an area of approximately 166ha in extent.

This EMPr has been developed on the basis of the findings of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) and must be implemented to protect sensitive on-site and off-site features through controlling construction, operation and decommissioning activities that could have a detrimental effect on the environment, and through avoiding or minimising potential impacts. This EMPr is applicable to all Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd employees and contractors working on the pre-construction, construction, and operation and maintenance phases of Mutsho Solar PV4. The document must be adhered to and updated as relevant throughout the project life cycle. This document fulfils the requirement of the EIA Regulations, 2014 (as amended) and forms part of the EIA report of the project.

In terms of the Duty of Care provision in S28(1) the project proponent must ensure that reasonable measures are taken throughout the life cycle of this project to ensure that any pollution or degradation of the environment associated with this project is avoided, halted or minimised. In terms of NEMA, it has become the legal duty of a project proponent to consider a project holistically, and to consider the cumulative effect of a variety of impacts. While no permitting or licensing requirements arise directly by virtue of Mutsho Solar PV4, this section will be applicable throughout the life cycle of the project.

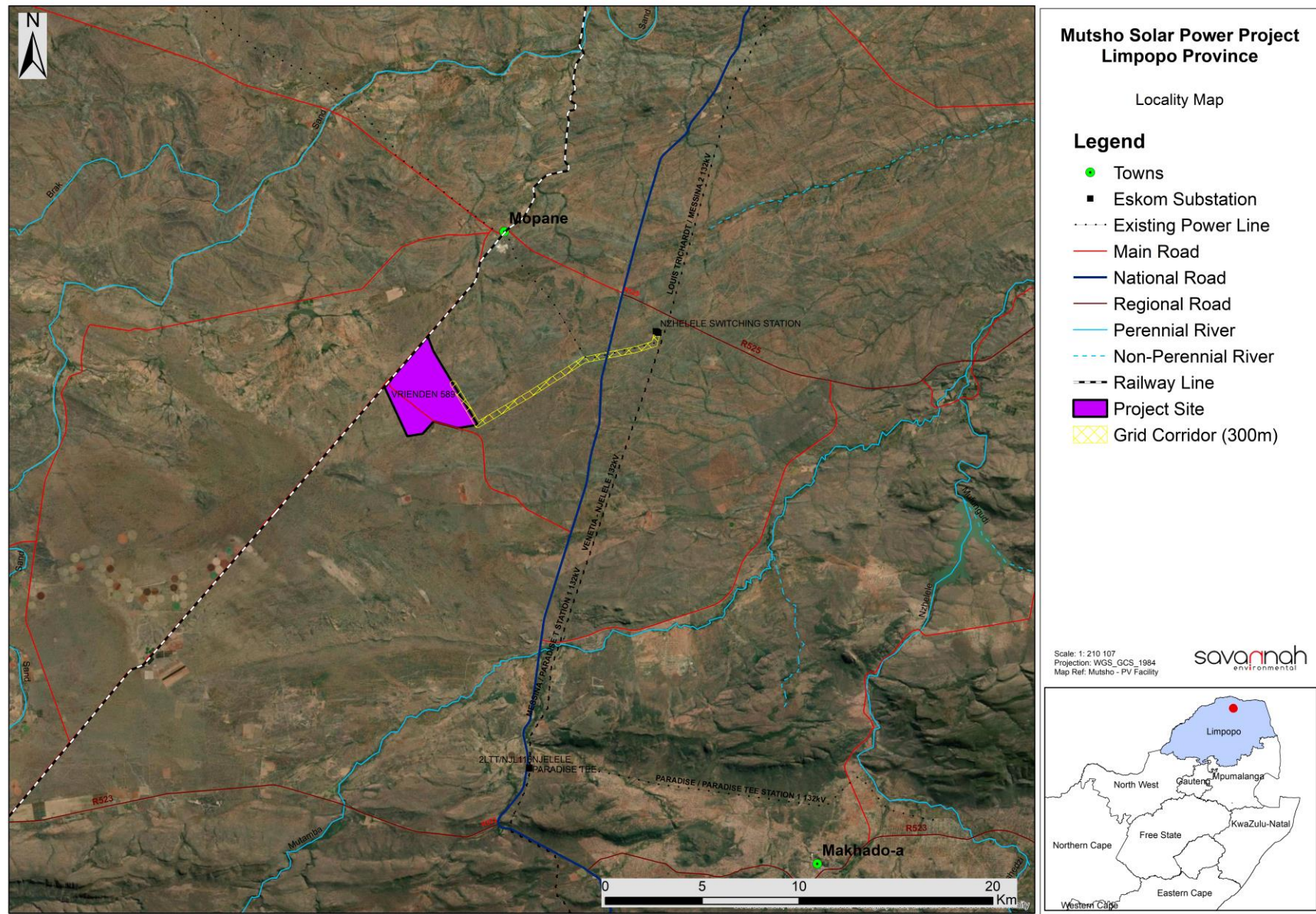
## CHAPTER 2: PROJECT DETAILS

---

Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd is proposing the construction and operation of a commercial Photovoltaic (PV) Solar Energy Facility and associated infrastructure on the Remaining Extent of Farm Vrienden 589 MS, located approximately 8km south-west of Mopane and 39km south-west of Musina, within the Musina Local Municipality and the Vhembe District Municipality in the Limpopo Province (refer to **Figure 2.1**). The facility will have a contracted capacity of up to 100MW and will be known as Mutsho Solar PV4. The project is planned as part of a cluster of renewable energy projects, which include three (3) additional 100MW Solar PV Energy Facilities and grid connection infrastructure connecting the facilities to the national grid, with the point of connection being the existing Nzhelele Substation.

The full extent of the project site (i.e., ~1 237ha) was considered during the Scoping Phase of the EIA process, within which Mutsho Solar PV4 will be appropriately located from a technical and environmental sensitivity perspective. A development footprint of ~166ha has been identified within the project site and assessed for the construction of the facility and its associated infrastructure. The optimal position for the PV facility was determined taking into consideration the environmental sensitivities identified through the Scoping Study. The PV infrastructure has been appropriately placed to optimise the energy generating potential of the solar resource while also minimising impacts on environmental sensitivities.





**Figure 2.1:** Locality map of the project site within which Mutsho Solar PV4 is proposed to be developed.

## 2.1. Components of Mutsho Solar PV4

Infrastructure associated with the Solar PV Energy Facility, which will enable the facility to supply a contracted capacity of up to 100MW, will include

- » Solar PV array comprising PV panels and mounting structures.
- » Inverters and transformers.
- » Cabling between the project components.
- » 33/132kV onsite substation (IPP Portion), including associated equipment and infrastructure – the onsite substation will be completely constructed as part of phase 1 (i.e., as part of Mutsho Solar PV1) but only equipped for the first 100MW. When such a time comes that the next 100 MW is constructed, the existing substation will be equipped for the additional 100MW generation capacity (i.e., additional transformers, extending the busbars, etc.). This approach will be followed as each 100MW facility is added to the cluster.
- » Site offices, warehouses, and guardhouses.
- » Water storage tanks at admin block for human consumption.
- » Laydown areas.
- » Internal gravel distribution roads

A summary of the details and dimensions of the planned infrastructure associated with the project is provided in **Table 2.3**.

**Table 2.3:** Details or dimensions of typical infrastructure required for the 100MW Mutsho Solar PV4.

Infrastructure	Footprint and dimensions
Number of Panels	Up to ~213 250
Panel Height	Up to ~3m (when panel is horizontal)
Technology	Horizontal single-axis tracking PV technology. Monofacial or bifacial panels are both considered. Central inverters and string inverters are both also considered.
Contracted Capacity	Up to 100MW
Area occupied by the solar array	~166ha
Area occupied by the onsite substation (IPP Portion)	~0.65ha (IPP Portion)
Capacity of onsite substation (IPP Portion)	33kV/132kV
Underground cabling between the PV array and the onsite substation	Underground cabling will be installed at a depth of up to 1.5m to connect the PV array to the onsite substation. The cabling will have a capacity of up to 33kV.
Battery Energy Storage System (BESS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Capacity: 40MW/80MWh (for Mutsho Solar PV1)</li> <li>» Footprint: 100mx100m</li> <li>» Proposed technology to be used: Lithium - Ion Battery or Lithium-iron-phosphate Battery or Redox vanadium.</li> <li>* Battery types to be considered: Solid State Batteries and Redox Flow Batteries.</li> </ul>
Area occupied by laydown area	0.5ha
Access and internal roads	Existing gravel access roads will be utilised to access the project site. If the width of the existing roads is less than 4m, then it will be widened to 4m to ensure the passage of vehicles. The widened part will be covered with mud and gravel.

Infrastructure	Footprint and dimensions
	Internal gravel roads of up to 5km in length and 4.5m in width will be required to access the PV panels and the onsite substation.
Grid connection	<p>The 33/132kV onsite substation (which comprises an IPP Portion and an Eskom Portion) will be connected to the existing Nzhelele Substation via a new 132kV double circuit overhead power line.</p> <p>There will be a single substation location for the entire 4 x 100MW project. The onsite substation will be completely constructed as part of phase 1 but only equipped for the first 100MW. When such a time comes that the next 100MW is constructed, the existing substation will be equipped for the additional 100MW generation capacity (i.e., additional transformers, extending the busbars, etc.). This approach will be followed as each 100MW facility is added to the cluster. The Eskom Portion of the 33/132kV onsite substation and the new 132kV single and double-circuit power line will be assessed as part of a separate Basic Assessment process in support of an application for EA.</p>
Temporary infrastructure	Temporary infrastructure, including laydown areas, will be required during the construction phase. All areas affected by temporary infrastructure will be rehabilitated following the completion of the construction phase, where it is not required for the operation phase.

**Table 2.4** provides details regarding the requirements and the activities to be undertaken during the Mutsho Solar PV4 development phases (i.e., construction phase, operation phase and decommissioning phase).



## 2.2. Activities and Components associated with Mutsho Solar PV4

**Table 2.4:** Details of the Mutsho Solar PV4 project development phases (i.e., construction, operation, and decommissioning)

<b><u>Pre-construction</u></b>	
<b>Requirements</b>	» Planning and design of facility.
<b>Activities to be undertaken</b>	
Conduct surveys prior to construction	» Including, but not limited to a detailed geotechnical survey, site survey and confirmation of the infrastructure micro-siting footprint.
<b><u>Construction Phase</u></b>	
<b>Requirements</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Project receives Environmental Authorisation from the DFFE, preferred bidder allocation granted by DMRE, a generating license issued by NERSA, and a Power Purchase Agreement secured with Eskom.</li> <li>» Expected to be up to 18 months for Mutsho Solar PV4.</li> <li>» Create direct construction employment opportunities. It is envisioned that approximately 100 – 150 employment opportunities will be created during the construction of Mutsho Solar PV4. The exact number of employment opportunities to be created will be determined by the progress of construction.</li> <li>» Management staff (less than 20) will be accommodated on site. Construction staff and local labourers will be responsible for sourcing their own accommodation in the nearby villages and towns such as Mopane and Musina. Transport from site to the nearby villages and towns may be provided on a daily basis depending on the number of staff, as well as the distance and routes from site to the nearby villages and towns.</li> <li>» Overnight on-site worker presence would be limited to security staff and management staff.</li> <li>» Waste removal will be undertaken by a suitably qualified sub-contractor. Waste containers, including containers for hazardous waste, will be located at easily accessible location on site when construction activities are undertaken.</li> <li>» During the construction phase, mobile chemical toilets or toilet facilities at the admin block to be established as part of the proposed development will be utilised. Sewage from the admin block toilet facilities will be stored in a conservancy or septic tank. Should a conservancy tank or mobile chemical toilets be utilised, these will be regularly pumped out by a dedicated service provider.</li> <li>» Electricity required for construction activities will be generated by a generator. Where low voltage connections are possible, these will be considered.</li> <li>» Water required for the construction phase either be sourced from drilling wells or supplied by the municipality by water tankers. Water will be used for sanitation and potable water on site as well as for construction works.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities to be undertaken</b>	
Establishment of access roads to the site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Existing access roads will be utilised to minimise impact. If the width of the existing roads is less than 4m, then these will be widened to 4m to ensure the passage of vehicles. The widened part will be covered with mud and gravel.</li> <li>» Internal gravel roads of up to 5km in length and 4.5m in width will be required to access the PV panels and the onsite substation. The exact location of these internal access roads will be determined by the final micro-siting or positioning of the PV panels.</li> </ul>

Undertake site preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Search and rescue of floral species of concern (where required) and the identification and excavation of any sites of cultural/heritage value (where required).</li> <li>» Clearance of vegetation within the development footprint.</li> <li>» Stripping of topsoil to be stockpiled, for use during rehabilitation.</li> </ul>
Establishment of laydown areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» A laydown area for the storage of PV panes components and civil engineering construction equipment will be established. The laydown will also accommodate building materials and equipment associated with the construction of buildings.</li> <li>» No borrow pits will be required. Infilling or depositing materials will be sourced from licenced borrow pits within the surrounding areas.</li> <li>» If ready-mix cement suppliers are close to site, cement could be directly purchased from them.</li> </ul>
Construct foundations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Excavations to be undertaken mechanically.</li> <li>» For PV array installation, vertical support posts will be driven into the ground.</li> <li>» Depending on geological conditions, the use of alternative foundations may be considered (e.g., screw pile, helical pile, micropile or drilled post/piles ).</li> </ul>
Transport of components and equipment to and within the site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The components for the Solar PV Energy Facility and onsite substation will be transported to site by road. Transportation will take place via appropriate National and Provincial roads, and the dedicated access/haul road to the site.</li> <li>» Some of the components (i.e., substation transformer) may be defined as abnormal loads in terms of the Road Traffic Act (Act No. 29 of 1989) by virtue of the dimensional limitations.</li> <li>» Typical civil engineering construction equipment will need to be brought to the site (e.g., excavators, trucks, graders, compaction equipment, cement trucks, etc.) as well as components required for the mounting of the PV support structures, construction of the substation and site preparation.</li> </ul>
Erect PV Panels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Installation of the solar PV panels and the structural and electrical infrastructure to make the plant operational.</li> <li>» For array installation, typically vertical support posts/piles are driven into the ground. Depending on the results of the geotechnical investigation, a different foundation method may be required. Different options include a screw pile, helical pile, micro-pile or drilled post/pile which may or may not need to be cast in concrete underground at an appropriate depth as determined by the geotechnical investigation. The posts will hold the support structures (tables) on which PV arrays would be mounted. Brackets attach the PV modules to the tables.</li> <li>» Trenches are dug for the underground AC and DC cabling and the foundations of the inverter enclosures and transformers are prepared.</li> <li>» Wire harnesses connect the PV modules to the electrical collection systems.</li> </ul>
Construct onsite substation (IPP Portion)	<p>The following simplified sequence is conducted for the construction of a substation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Step 1: Surveying of the development footprint, engaging with affected landowners, environmental specialist walkthroughs to inform permitting requirements.</li> <li>» Step 2: Final design and micro-siting of the infrastructure based on geo-technical, topographical conditions and potential environmental sensitivities.</li> <li>» Step 3: Search-and-rescue activities, vegetation clearance and construction of access roads/tracks (where required), including installation of fencing.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Step 4: Trenching and ground grid conduit installation.</li> <li>» Step 5: Installation of concrete foundations.</li> <li>» Step 6: Assembly and installation of steel structures and isolators.</li> <li>» Step 7: Control building assembly.</li> <li>» Step 8: Gravel placement and commissioning.</li> <li>» Step 9: Rehabilitation of disturbed areas.</li> <li>» Step 10: Continued maintenance.</li> </ul>
Establishment of ancillary infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Site offices and maintenance buildings, guardhouses, warehouses, storage tanks and workshop areas for maintenance and storage will be required.</li> <li>» Establishment will require the clearing of vegetation, levelling, and the excavation of foundations prior to construction.</li> </ul>
Connection of PV panels to the onsite substation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays to be connected to the on-site substation via underground electrical cables.</li> <li>» Excavation of trenches is required for the installation of the cables. Trenches will be approximately 1.5m deep.</li> <li>» Underground cables are planned to follow the internal access roads, as far as possible.</li> </ul>
Undertake site rehabilitation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Commence with rehabilitation efforts once construction is completed in an area, and all construction equipment is removed.</li> <li>» On commissioning, access points to the site not required during the operation phase will be closed and prepared for rehabilitation.</li> </ul>
<b><u>Operation Phase</u></b>	
<b>Requirements</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Duration will be up to 25 years.</li> <li>» Requirements for security and maintenance of the project.</li> <li>» Employment opportunities relating mainly to operation activities and maintenance. The exact number of employment opportunities for the operation phase depends on the requirements of stakeholders.</li> <li>» Waste - waste will be minimised, re-used, and recycled as far as practically possible. Where re-use and recycling is not possible, waste will be removed by a sub-contractor or the municipality, where possible, for disposal at a registered facility. Waste containers, including containers for hazardous waste, will be located at easily accessible locations on site.</li> <li>» <i>Sanitation</i> – during the operation phase, toilet facilities at the admin block will be utilised. Sewage from the admin block toilet facilities will be stored in a conservancy or septic tank. Should a conservancy tank be utilised, this will be regularly pumped out by a dedicated service provider.</li> <li>» <i>Water supply</i> – water will be required for the operation phase for cleaning, fire control and general usage. Water will be sourced from drilling wells or from a registered water services provider such as the municipality.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities to be undertaken</b>	
Operation and Maintenance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Full time security, maintenance, and control room staff.</li> <li>» The PV Facility will be operational except under circumstances of mechanical breakdown, inclement weather conditions, or maintenance activities.</li> <li>» The PV Facility will be subject to periodic maintenance and inspection.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» It is anticipated that the PV panels will be washed twice per month during operation using clean water with no cleaning products, or non-hazardous biodegradable cleaning products.</li> <li>» Disposal of waste products (e.g., oil) to be undertaken in accordance with relevant waste management legislation.</li> <li>» Areas which were disturbed during the construction phase to be utilised, should a laydown area be required during operation.</li> </ul>
<b><u>Decommissioning Phase</u></b>	
<b>Requirements</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Decommissioning of the Mutsho Solar PV4 infrastructure at the end of its economic life.</li> <li>» Potential for repowering of the facility, depending on the condition of the facility at the time.</li> <li>» Expected lifespan of approximately 25 years (with maintenance) before decommissioning is required.</li> <li>» Decommissioning activities to comply with the legislation relevant at the time.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities to be undertaken</b>	
Site preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Confirming the integrity of access to the site to accommodate the required decommissioning equipment.</li> <li>» Preparation of the site (e.g., laydown areas and construction platform).</li> <li>» Mobilisation of construction equipment.</li> </ul>
Disassemble and remove PV panels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Components to be reused, recycled, or disposed of in accordance with regulatory requirements.</li> <li>» Much of the above ground wire, steel, and PV panels of which the system is comprised are recyclable materials and would be recycled to the extent feasible.</li> <li>» Concrete will be removed to a depth as defined by an agricultural specialist and the area rehabilitated.</li> <li>» Cables will be excavated and removed, as may be required</li> </ul>

It is expected that the areas of the project site affected by the PV Facility infrastructure (development footprint) will revert back to their original land-use (i.e. agriculture) once Mutsho Solar PV4 has reached the end of its economic life and all infrastructure has been decommissioned.

## 2.3. Findings of the EIA Report

The EIA Report, together with the specialist studies provide a detailed assessment of the potential impacts that may result from the development of Mutsho Solar PV4. No environmental fatal flaws or unacceptable impacts were identified in the detailed specialist studies conducted, provided that the recommended mitigation measures are implemented. These measures include, amongst others, the avoidance of sensitive features within the development footprint and the undertaking of the construction and operational bird monitoring as specified by the specialists.

The potential environmental impacts associated with Mutsho Solar PV4 assessed through the EIA process include:

- » Impacts on terrestrial ecology (flora and fauna).
- » Impacts on freshwater ecology.
- » Impacts on avifauna.
- » Impacts on soils and agricultural potential.
- » Impacts on heritage resources, including archaeology, palaeontology and the cultural landscape.
- » Visual impacts on the area imposed by the components of the facility.
- » Positive and negative social impacts.

The environmental sensitivities identified by the relevant specialists for the project site as discussed in the following sections are illustrated in **Figure 2.2**. The development footprint, as assessed, has been overlain with the relevant environmental sensitivities.

### 2.3.1. Impacts on Terrestrial Ecology (including flora and fauna) and Freshwater Ecology

#### Terrestrial Ecology

Four habitat units were identified during the assessment and included closed woodland, a rocky area, watercourses, and mopane bushveld. The sensitivity of these habitats ranged from high to medium with the closed woodland, rocky area and watercourses regarded as high sensitivity due to the species recorded and the role of this intact unique habitat to biodiversity, whilst the mopane bushveld is regarded as having a medium sensitivity.

A total of 72 plant species were found within the project/study area, which consisted of 67 native, 0 Red List, 4 protected, 0 SA endemic, 0 alien, and 1 NEM:BA listed invasive species.

A total of 13 mammal, 0 amphibian, and 3 reptile species were recorded within the project/study area. No amphibian or reptile SCC were recorded within the study area; and no mammal SoCC were recorded, namely. It was determined that the development will not detrimentally impact these populations as no faunal SCC were recorder within the project/study area.

During the field assessment 3 species of protected trees were observed: *Boscia albitrunca* (Shepard's tree), *Adansonia digitata* (Baobab), and *Sclerocarya birrea subsp. caffra* (Marula). It is of vital importance that a search a rescue along with permit applications be done prior to the commencement of the development. The density of the trees is regarded a very high especially in the case of *B. albitrunca*.

Biodiversity maintenance is one key ecological service provided by the identified terrestrial biodiversity areas through their ecological integrity, importance and functioning. As such the preservation of these systems is an important aspect to consider for the proposed project.

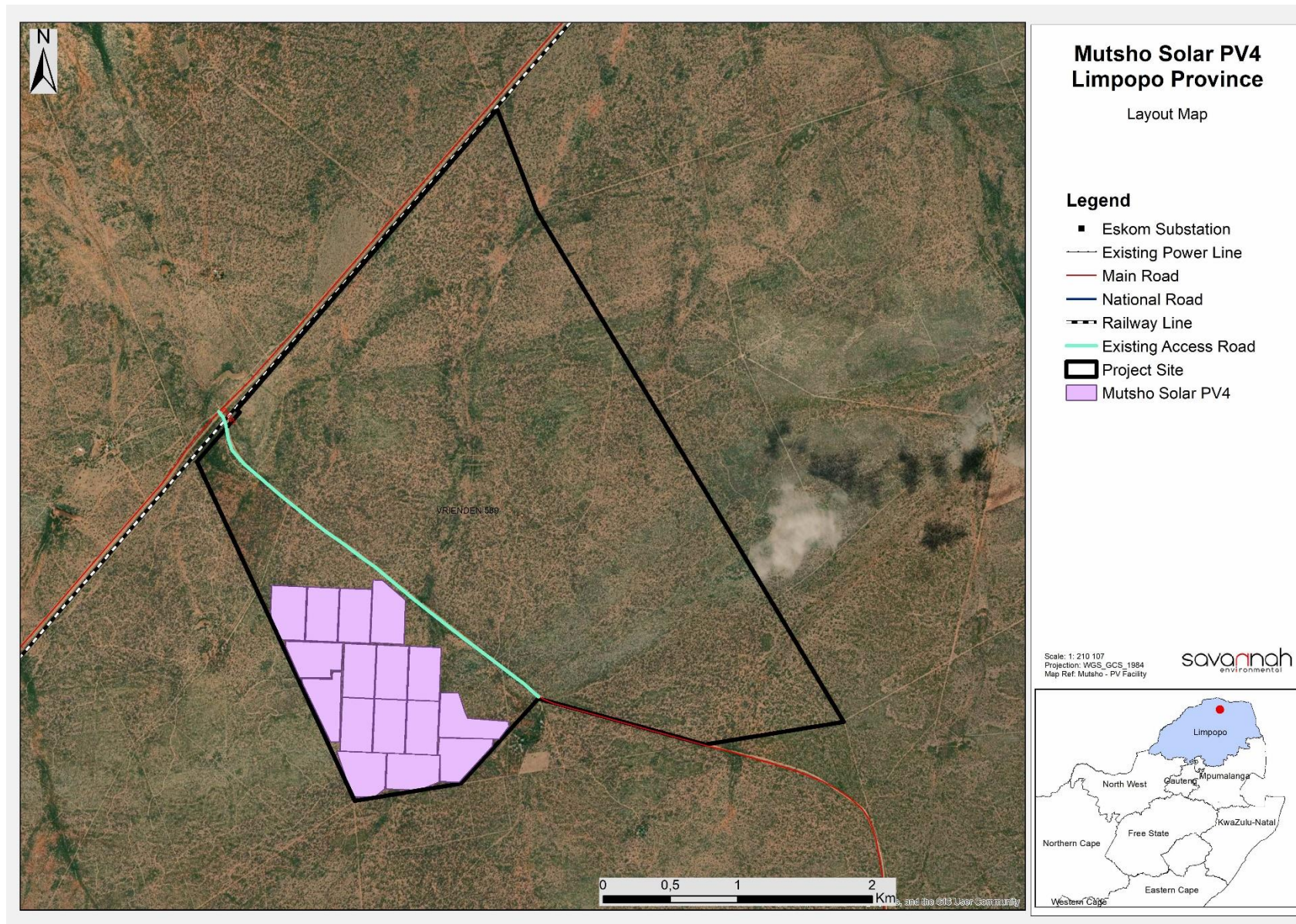
Any development in high sensitivity areas must be avoided as far as possible, which will occur with the selection of the project area. Development within the high sensitivity areas within the project area will lead the direct destruction and loss of functional habitats; and the faunal species that are expected to utilise this habitat. Thus, if these areas are not maintained in a natural or near natural state, destroyed or fragmented, then meeting targets for biodiversity features will not be achieved. The mitigation measures, management and associated monitoring regarding the expected impacts will be the most important factor of this project and must be considered by the issuing authority.

#### Freshwater Ecology

One (1) form of a watercourse was identified and delineated within the regulated area applied, namely ephemeral drainage lines/ features. Natural wetlands were absent from the project area. The nearest known 'pan' system is more than 3 km north-west of the project area. No functional assessment was completed for the delineated watercourses. A buffer width of 15 m is recommended for each of the drainage features. Regulated areas delineated with a 32m and 100m buffer were also identified and recommended for each drainage feature.

Considering the findings of the assessment, no fatal flaws were identified from a freshwater ecology perspective. Provided that the mitigation is successfully implemented, the specialist is of the opinion that the establishment of the proposed solar facility is unlikely to pose a significant threat to local watercourses with all anticipated impacts having a Low residual risk rating. Supporting remediation measures prescribed herein should also be considered for a project specific stormwater management





**Figure 2.2:** The development footprint of Mutsho Solar PV4, as assessed within the EIA Report

### 2.3.2. Impacts on Avifauna

Based on the desktop assessment the project area falls within an ESA1, Vhembe Biosphere Reserve, the Musina Mopane Bushveld vegetation type and have a known occurrence of avifauna SCCs found in and around the project area.

The field assessment was conducted in the winter season and is regarded as a follow up survey that was performed by Pachnoda (2018) in the summer. During this survey fifty-seven (57) bird species were recorded, none of which were an SCC, four species were however identified that is regarded as risk species due to collisions and electrocutions by PV plants and associated infrastructure. They are Southern Pale Chanting Goshawk (*Melierax canorus*), Helmeted Guineafowl (*Numida meleagris*), African Harrier-Hawk (*Polyboroides typus*) and Pied Crow (*Corvus albus*). Four SCCs, Kori Bustard (*Ardeotis kori*); Black Stork (*Ciconia nigra*); Saddle-billed Stork (*Ephippiorhynchus senegalensis*), and White-backed Vulture (*Gyps africanus*) were recorded by Pachnoda (2018) which does increase the overall sensitivity of the area.

The main impacts identified to be associated with the proposed project are the loss of habitat, including the loss of nest sites in larger trees such as the Baobabs that will be lost in the area, disturbance, collision and electrocution risk. These impacts are expected to have a large impact on the avifauna community and more specifically the SCCs that has been found and could likely occur in the area. Mitigation measures as described in this report can be implemented to reduce the significance of the risk but there is still a possibility of impacts. Considering that this area has been identified as being of significance for biodiversity maintenance and ecological processes (Moderate and High sensitivity), development may proceed but with caution and only with the implementation of mitigation measures.

Considering the above-mentioned information, it is the opinion of the specialist that the project, may be favourably considered, on condition all prescribed mitigation measures and supporting recommendations are implemented.

### 2.3.3. Impacts on Soils and Agricultural Potential

The most sensitive soil forms identified within the assessment corridor is the Hutton and Nkonkoni soil forms.

The assessment area is associated with arable soils, due to some of the type of soils available. However, the climate limits crop production significantly. The harsh climatic conditions are associated with low annual rainfall and high evapotranspiration potential demands of the area. The area is not favourable for most cropping practices.

The land capability sensitivity (DAFF, 2017) indicates a range of sensitivities expected throughout the project focus area, which predominantly covers "Low" to "Moderate" sensitivities. Small patches are characterised by "Very Low" sensitivities. In the assessment area there is no segregation of agricultural lands or crop fields with high potentials. The land capability and land potential in the assessed area concur. The "Very Low to Moderate" sensitivities also falls within the DAFF, (2017) requirements for a compliance statement report only (refer to **Appendix F** of the EIA Report).



It is the specialist's opinion that the proposed solar power project will have limited impact on the agricultural production ability of the land. Additionally, the proposed activities will not result in the segregation of any high production agricultural land. Therefore, the proposed solar power project may be favourably considered.

#### **2.3.4. Impacts on Heritage Resources (archaeology, palaeontology and cultural landscape)**

The current and past heritage assessments of this property have identified limited heritage resources of cultural value. A previous assessment identified Farm Vrienden 589 as preferred for development with limited impacts to heritage resources anticipated as its overall heritage sensitivity is regarded as LOW overall. The most significant site identified in the vicinity of the development is Site V04. It is recommended that Site V04, the Baobab Room, must not be impacted by any activity and any proposed activity on this farm must adhere to a buffer area of 100m around this site. This site is located a significant distance from the area proposed for development.

The PIA notes that "The scarcity of fossil heritage at the proposed development footprint indicate that the impact of the (of the development) will be of a low significance in palaeontological terms... Thus, the construction and operation of the facility may be authorised as the whole extent of the development footprint is not considered sensitive in terms of palaeontological resources."

In light of these findings, there is no objection to the proposed development on heritage grounds on condition that the recommendations outlined below are adhered to.

Based on the outcomes of the Heritage Impact Assessment, it is not anticipated that the proposed development of the solar energy facility and its associated infrastructure will negatively impact on significant heritage resources on condition that:

- » The recommendations in the VIA are implemented.
- » A 100m no-go buffer must be implemented around site MOP115.
- » The Chance Fossil Finds Procedure must be implemented for the duration of construction activities.
- » Should any buried archaeological resources or human remain or burials be uncovered during the course of development activities, work must cease in the vicinity of these finds. The South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) must be contacted immediately in order to determine an appropriate way forward.

#### **2.3.5. Visual Impacts**

The following sensitivities have been identified from a visual perspective:

- » Highly sensitive areas include:
  - \* Areas immediately surrounding homesteads development of which is likely to significantly change the character of views for residents and guests. A 500m buffer is proposed which should be sufficient to ensure that development does not totally dominate views. It is possible that receptors (owners /residents / guests) have no concern regarding the development of these areas, in which case the sensitivity rating will reduce.

- » Medium sensitivity areas include:
  - \* Corridors beside the roads that could be affected. Due to distance, the main roads that run through the area are unlikely to be significantly impacted. As indicated in previously, given that local unsurfaced roads are likely to provide access to local lodges, these also have tourism importance.
- » Low sensitivity areas include:
  - \* All other areas of the proposed site.

It was determined that the potential visual impacts would be:

- » The impact on the landscape in the area was assessed as having an impact of low significance with mitigation.
- » The impact relating to views from local main roads was assessed as having a low significance after mitigation.
- » The impact relating to tourist views from trains was assessed as having a low significance after mitigation.
- » The impact relating to views from settlements was assessed as having a low significance after mitigation.
- » The impact relating to views from homesteads and recreational/local tourism facilities was assessed as having a medium negative significance without mitigation and a low significance after mitigation.
- » The impact relating to lighting (security and operational lighting) was assessed as likely to have low significance with mitigation.
- » The impact relating to glare will be of low significance with appropriate mitigation.

The proposed project will generally result in landscape and visual impacts of low to high significance. Subject to mitigation measures being undertaken, mitigation measures arising and the recommended mitigation measures, from a Landscape and Visual Impact perspective, it is the specialist's opinion that there is no reason why the proposed layout should not be authorised.

### **2.3.6. Socio-Economic Impacts**

Impacts are expected to occur with the development of Mutsho Solar PV4 during the construction, operation and decommissioning phases. Both positive and negative impacts are identified and assessed.

Impacts during construction include:

- » Impact on production.
- » Impact on the Gross Domestic Product (GDP).
- » Impact on employment creation.
- » Skills development.
- » Household income and standard living.
- » Temporary increase in government revenue.
- » Change in sense of place.
- » Impact on agricultural operations
- » Influx of people.
- » Impact on economic and social infrastructure

Impacts during the operation phase include:

- » Impact on production.
- » Impact on the GDP.
- » Employment creation.
- » Household income and standard of living.
- » Increase in government revenue.
- » Rental revenue for landowners.
- » Improvement in energy sector generation.
- » Visual and sense of place impacts.
- » Impacts on agricultural operations.

Both positive and negative impacts are expected throughout the construction and operation of the proposed solar energy facility. Positive impacts during both construction and operation are expected to be of medium and high significance pre-enhancement and can be increase to medium and high post-enhancement. Negative impacts during both construction and operation are expected to be of medium and low significance pre-mitigation and can be reduced to medium (different score) and low significance post-mitigation, depending on the type of impact.

The net positive impacts associated with the development and operation of the proposed Project are expected to outweigh the net negative effects. The Project is also envisaged to have a positive stimulus on the local economy and employment creation, leading to the economy's diversification and a small reduction in the unemployment rate. The Project should therefore be considered for development. It should, however, be acknowledged that the negative impacts would be largely borne by the nearby farms and households residing on them, whilst the positive impacts will be distributed throughout both the local and national economies.

Due to this imbalance, it is recommended that the mitigation measures suggested, be strictly adhered to. Application of these mitigation measures will ensure that the negative impacts on the nearby farms and businesses are minimised and that the distribution of the potential benefits of the project are more balanced. It is important to value to commercial tourism farmer as he believes that he will not be able to continue with is operations due to the projects. It is thus advised that further communication towards the landowners will be vital for the project.

### **2.3.8. Assessment of Cumulative Impacts**

Cumulative impacts are expected to occur with the development of Mutsho Solar PV4 throughout all phases of the project life cycle and within all areas of study considered as part of this EIA report. The main aim for the assessment of cumulative impacts considering Mutsho Solar PV4 is to test and determine whether the development will be acceptable within the landscape proposed for the development, and whether the loss, from an environmental and social perspective, will be acceptable without whole-scale change.

The following conclusions can be drawn regarding the cumulative impacts associated with the project:

- » There will be no unacceptable loss or impact on ecological aspects (vegetation types, species and ecological processes) due to the development of Mutsho Solar PV4 and other renewable energy projects

within the surrounding area, provided the recommended mitigation measures are implemented. The cumulative impact is therefore acceptable.

- » There will be no significant loss of sensitive and significant aquatic features. The cumulative impact is therefore acceptable.
- » There will be no unacceptable risk to avifauna with the development of Mutsho Solar PV4 and other renewable energy projects within the surrounding area, provided the recommended mitigation measures are implemented. This is due to the limited footprint expected to be associated with the renewable energy facilities proposed in authorised in the area. The cumulative impact is therefore acceptable.
- » Change to the sense of place and character of the area is expected with the development of the proposed Mutsho Solar PV4 and other renewable energy facilities within a 30km radius of the site. Other large scale industrial operations including mining operations and power stations are relatively obvious in the region. Whilst the proposed project will create a new industrial operation and change the character of an area of rural landscape, this is not entirely out of character with the region. The cumulative impact is therefore considered to be acceptable.
- » There will be no unacceptable loss of heritage resources associated with the development of Mutsho Solar PV4. There will also be no unacceptable impacts to the cultural landscape as a result of the development of the facility provided that the recommended development buffers along major routes are adhered to. The cumulative impact is therefore acceptable.
- » No unacceptable social impacts are expected to occur. Two positive cumulative impacts are expected to occur from a social perspective (i.e., increase in production and employment opportunities). These impacts will be of medium significance. Positive cumulative impacts are expected to be beneficial at a regional level. The cumulative impact is therefore acceptable.

The cumulative impacts associated with Mutsho Solar PV4 will be of a low and medium significance. A summary of the cumulative impacts is included in **Table 2.6** below.

**Table 2.6:** Summary of the cumulative impact significance for Mutsho Solar PV4.

Specialist assessment	Overall significance of impact of the proposed project considered in isolation	Cumulative significance of impact of the project and other projects in the area
Terrestrial and Freshwater Ecology	Low	Low
Avifauna	Low	Low
Soils and Agricultural Potential	Low	Low
Heritage (including archaeology, palaeontology and sense of place)	Low	Low
Visual	Low	Low
Socio-Economic	<i>Positive impacts:</i> Medium  <i>Negative impacts:</i> Medium	<i>Positive impacts:</i> Medium  <i>Negative impacts:</i> Medium

Based on the specialist cumulative assessment and findings, the development of Mutsho Solar PV4 and its contribution to the overall impact of all renewable energy projects to be developed within a 30km radius, it can

be concluded that Mutsho Solar PV4 cumulative impacts will be of low and medium significance. Based on all other areas of study considered as part of this EIA report, the development of Mutsho Solar PV4 will not result in unacceptable, high cumulative impacts and will not result in a whole-scale change of the environment.

### **2.3.9. Assessment of No-go Alternative**

The no-go is the continuation of the existing land use, i.e. maintain the status quo. As detailed in the sections above, there would be no environmental impacts on the site or to the surrounding local area due to the construction and operation activities of a solar farm with the implementation of this alternative. All negative impacts, specifically related to the development of the solar farm, discussed in this report will not materialise.

The 'do-nothing' alternative will do little to influence the renewable energy targets set by government. However, as the project site experiences ample solar resource and optimal grid connection opportunities, not developing Mutsho Solar PV4 would see such an opportunity being lost. In addition, the Limpopo Province will not benefit from additional generated power being evacuated directly into the Province's grid. As current land use activities can continue on the site once the project is operational, the loss of the land to this project during the operation phase (less than 1% of the larger project site) is not considered significant. Therefore, from a regional perspective, the 'do-nothing' alternative is not preferred as there is a perceived loss of benefits for the regional area.

From the specialist studies undertaken, no environmental fatal flaws were identified to be associated with Mutsho Solar PV4 subject to implementation of the recommended mitigation measures. All impacts associated with the project can be mitigated to acceptable levels. If the solar energy facility is not developed, the following positive impacts will not be realised:

- » Job creation from the construction and operation phases.
- » Economic benefit to participating landowners due to the revenue that will be gained from leasing the land to the developer.
- » Meeting of energy generation mix in a most economic and rapid manner.
- » Provision of clean, renewable energy in an area where it is optimally available.

As detailed above, the 'do-nothing' alternative will result in a number of lost opportunities. The 'do nothing' alternative is therefore not preferred and not proposed to be implemented for the development of Mutsho Solar PV4.

### **2.3.10. Assessment of the Facility Layout**

The indicative facility layout/development footprint assessed within this EIA Report (**Figure 2.3**) was designed by the project developer in order to respond to and avoid the sensitive environmental and social features located within the project site, which were identified by the specialists during the Scoping Phase of the EIA process. This approach ensured the application of the mitigation hierarchy (i.e., avoid, minimise, mitigate, and offset) to the proposed project, which ultimately ensures that the development is appropriate from an environmental perspective and is suitable for development within the project site.

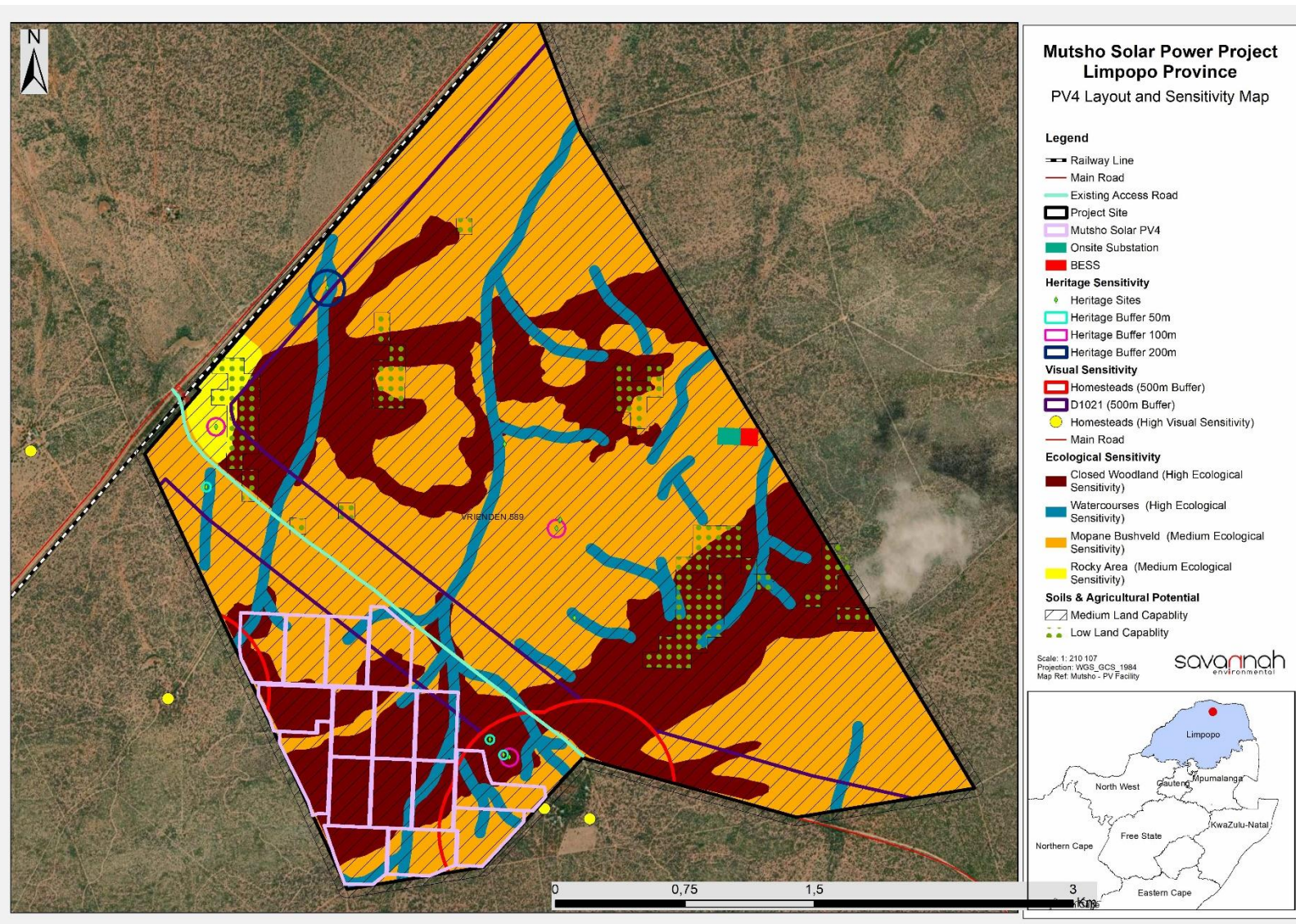
Although the proposed layout overlaps with areas of sensitivity, the specialists have concluded that the project as proposed can be authorised on condition that the recommended mitigation measures are implemented. As such, the impact of this proposed Facility Layout is considered to be acceptable, and the layout is recommended for approval. Final micro-siting must however be undertaken prior to construction considering all mitigation measures recommended within this EIA Report and associated specialist studies.

### **2.3.11. Environmental Costs versus Benefits of Mutsho Solar PV4**

Environmental costs (including those to the natural environment, economic and social environment) can be anticipated at a local and site-specific level and are considered acceptable provided the mitigation measures as outlined in the EIA Report and the EMP are implemented and adhered to. No fatal flaws have been identified. These environmental costs could include:

- » *Loss of biodiversity, flora and fauna due to the clearing of land for the construction and utilisation of land for the solar facility* - The cost of loss of biodiversity has been minimised/avoided through avoiding placement of project components and infrastructure within the ecological features considered to be of very high sensitivity (no-go areas).
- » *Impacts on freshwater resources* - the impacts on freshwater resources have been minimised through the avoidance of the sensitive features by project infrastructure. The internal access roads and MV Cabling will however need to cross some freshwater resource features, some of which will be on existing gravel roads.
- » *Visual impacts associated with the solar facility/impacts to the sense of place* – Mutsho Solar PV4 will be visible to receptors up to a distance of 10km from the site and mainly of a high significance. No mitigation of this impact is possible (i.e., the structures will be visible in the landscape), but general mitigation and management are required as best practise to minimise secondary visual impacts which may arise from mismanagement of the site. Other large scale industrial operations including mining operations and power stations are relatively obvious in the region. Whilst the proposed project will create a new large scale industrial operation and change the character of an area of rural landscape, this is not entirely out of character with the region.
- » *Loss of land for agriculture* – The development will remove areas available for agricultural activities; however, based on the small development footprint of the solar facility and the fact that agricultural activities can continue on the properties together with the solar facility, this will be limited and not significant.
- » *Impacts on birds*– loss of bird species due to collision with infrastructure. The impact has been minimised through the avoidance of areas of high sensitivity and is considered to be acceptable with implementation of mitigation measures.
- » *Negative impact to the cultural landscape* – Mutsho Solar PV4 is proposed within a landscape area with an overriding rural character within which there are large industrial nodes including mining operations and coal fired power stations. Whilst the proposed project will create a new large scale industrial node within the agricultural landscape, this is not entirely out of character with the broader region. However, it will be a significant local character change.
- » *Loss of heritage and palaeontological resources* – A Boabab Room were identified within and close to the project site, around which a 100m no-go buffer has been recommended.





**Figure 2.3:** The development footprint of Mutsho Solar PV4, as assessed within this EIA Report, overlain on the identified sensitive environmental features

Benefits of Mutsho Solar PV4 include the following:

- » The project will result in important economic benefits at the local and regional scale through job creation, income and other associated downstream economic development, supporting the Just Energy Transition in the region. These will persist during the pre-construction, construction, operation and decommissioning phases of the project.
- » The project provides an opportunity for a new land use on the affected properties which would result in additional financial benefits to the directly affected landowners through compensation. It is important to note that the construction and operation of a solar facility can occur in tandem with crop production.
- » The project contributes towards the Provincial and Local goals for the development of renewable energy as outlined in the respective IDPs.
- » The project serves to diversify the economy and electricity generation mix of South Africa through the addition of solar energy, in line with national policy regarding energy generation.
- » The water requirement for a solar facility is negligible compared to the levels of water used by coal-based technologies. This generation technology is therefore supported in dry climatic areas.
- » South Africa's per capita greenhouse gas emissions are amongst the highest in the world due to the reliance on fossil fuels. Mutsho Solar PV4 will contribute to achieving goals for implementation of renewable energy and sustaining a 'green' economy within South Africa.

The benefits of Mutsho Solar PV4 are expected to occur at a national, regional and local level. As the costs to the environment at a site-specific level have been largely limited through the appropriate placement of infrastructure on the project site within lower sensitive areas, the benefits of the project are expected to partially offset the localised environmental costs of the solar facility, provided that the mitigation measures, as recommended by the specialists are adhered to.

### **2.3.12. Overall Conclusion (Impact Statement)**

The preferred activity was determined by the developer to be the development of a renewable energy facility on site using solar as the preferred technology, due to the availability of a strong solar resource, available grid capacity, benign topography, and good access. A technically viable development footprint was proposed by the developer considering environmental sensitivities identified in the scoping study and assessed as part of the EIA process. The assessment of the development footprint within the project site was undertaken by independent specialists and their findings have informed the results of this EIA Report.

From a review of the relevant policy and planning framework, it was concluded that the project is well aligned with the policy framework, and a clear need for the project is seen from a policy perspective at a local, provincial and National level.

The specialist findings from the EIA studies undertaken have indicated that there are no identified fatal flaws associated with the implementation of the development footprint within the project site subject to implementation of the recommended mitigation measures. Although the proposed layout for the PV facility and associated infrastructure overlaps with areas of sensitivity, the specialists have concluded that the project as proposed can be authorised on condition that the recommended mitigation measures are implemented. Impacts can be mitigated to acceptable levels or enhanced through the implementation of the recommended mitigation or enhancement measures. The layout assessed within this EIA Report is therefore considered to be acceptable for implementation.



As detailed in the cost-benefit analysis, the benefits of Mutsho Solar PV4 are expected to occur at a national, regional and local level. As the costs to the environment at a site-specific level can be appropriately managed and minimised, the benefits of the project are expected to partially offset the localised environmental costs of the solar facility. From a social perspective, both positive and negative impacts are expected. The implementation of the 'do-nothing' alternative will result in a number of lost opportunities. The 'do nothing' alternative is therefore not preferred and not proposed to be implemented for the development of Mutsho Solar PV4.

Through the assessment of the development footprint within the project site, it can be concluded that the development of Mutsho Solar PV4 will not result in unacceptable environmental impacts (subject to the implementation of the recommended mitigation measures).

### **2.3.13. Overall Recommendation**

Considering the findings of the independent specialist studies, the impacts identified, the development footprint proposed by the developer, the avoidance of the sensitive environmental features within the project site, as well as the potential to further minimise the impacts to acceptable levels through mitigation, it is the reasoned opinion of the EAP that Mutsho Solar PV4 is acceptable within the landscape and can reasonably be authorised subject to implementation of the refined optimised facility layout and the mitigation and enhancement measures recommended by the specialists.

Mutsho Solar PV4 with a contracted capacity of up to 100MW includes the following infrastructure (to be included within an authorisation issued for the project):

- » Solar PV array comprising PV panels and mounting structures.
- » Inverters and transformers.
- » Cabling between the project components.
- » 33/132kV onsite substation (IPP Portion), including associated equipment and infrastructure – the onsite substation will be completely constructed as part of phase 1 (i.e., as part of Mutsho Solar PV1) but only equipped for the first 100MW. When such a time comes that the next 100 MW is constructed, the existing substation will be equipped for the additional 100MW generation capacity (i.e., additional transformers, extending the busbars, etc.). This approach will be followed as each 100MW facility is added to the cluster.
- » Site offices, warehouses, and guardhouses.
- » Water storage tanks at admin block for human consumption.
- » Laydown areas.
- » Internal gravel distribution roads

The following key conditions would be required to be included within an authorisation issued for Mutsho Solar PV4:

- » All mitigation measures detailed within this EIA Report, as well as the specialist reports contained within **Appendices D to I** are to be implemented.
- » The EMPs (for the facility and onsite substation) as contained within **Appendix K** of this EIA Report should form part of the contract with the Contractors appointed to construct and maintain the solar facility in order to ensure compliance with environmental specifications and management measures. The

implementation of this EMP for all life cycle phases of Mutsho Solar PV4 is considered key in achieving the appropriate environmental management standards as detailed for this project.

- » Following the final design of Mutsho Solar PV4, a final layout must be submitted to DFFE for review and approval prior to commencing with construction. Micro-siting must take all recommended mitigation measures into consideration. No development is permitted within the identified no-go areas as detailed in **Figure 2.3**
- » An Environmental Site Officer (ESO) must form part of the on-site team to ensure that the EMP is implemented and enforced and an Environmental Control Officer (ECO) must be appointed to monitor compliance for the duration of the construction phase.
- » Preconstruction walk-through of the final development footprint must be undertaken for protected species that would be affected and that can be translocated must be undertaken. The survey must also cover sensitive habitats and species that are required to be avoided. Permits from the relevant provincial authorities, will be required to relocate and/or disturb listed plant species.
- » Prevent birds from nesting in substation infrastructure through exclusion covers or spikes if required (determined on a case-by-case basis).
- » All other relevant environmental permits must be obtained prior to the construction of the facility.

A validity period of 10 years of the Environmental Authorisation is requested, should the project obtain approval from DFFE

## CHAPTER 3: PURPOSE AND OBJECTIVES OF THE EMPR

---

An Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) is defined as “an environmental management tool used to ensure that undue or reasonably avoidable adverse impacts of the construction, operation and decommissioning of a project are prevented or mitigated, and that the positive benefits of the projects are enhanced”. The objective of this EMPr is to provide consistent information and guidance for implementing the management and monitoring measures established in the permitting process and help achieve environmental policy goals. The purpose of an EMPr is to help ensure continuous improvement of environmental performance, reducing negative impacts and enhancing positive effects during the construction and operation of the facility. An effective EMPr is concerned with both the immediate outcome as well as the long-term impacts of the project.

The EMPr provides specific environmental guidance for the construction and operation phases of a project and is intended to manage and mitigate construction and operation activities so that unnecessary or preventable environmental impacts do not result. These impacts range from those incurred during start up (site clearing and site establishment) through to those incurred during the construction activities themselves (erosion, noise, dust) to those incurred during site rehabilitation (soil stabilisation, re-vegetation) and operation. The EMPr also defines monitoring requirements in order to ensure that the specified objectives are met.

This EMPr is applicable to all employees and contractors working on the pre-construction, construction, and operation and maintenance phases of Mutsho Solar PV4. The document must be adhered to and updated as relevant throughout the project life cycle.

This EMPr has been compiled in accordance with Appendix 4 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 (as amended). This is a dynamic document and will be further developed in terms of specific requirements listed in any authorisations issued for Mutsho Solar PV4 and/or as the project develops. The EMPr has been developed as a set of environmental specifications (i.e. principles of environmental management). The specifications have been developed on the basis of the findings of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) and must be implemented to protect sensitive on-site and off-site features through controlling construction, operation and decommissioning activities that could have a detrimental effect on the environment, and through avoiding or minimising potential impacts.

The EMPr has the following objectives:

- » Outline mitigation measures and environmental specifications which are required to be implemented for the planning, construction, rehabilitation and operation phases of the project in order to minimise the extent of environmental impacts, and to manage environmental impacts associated with Mutsho Solar PV4.
- » Ensure that the construction and operation phases do not result in undue or reasonably avoidable adverse environmental impacts and ensure that any potential environmental benefits are enhanced.
- » Identify entities who will be responsible for the implementation of the measures and outline functions and responsibilities.
- » Propose mechanisms and frequency for monitoring compliance and prevent long-term or permanent environmental degradation.

- » Facilitate appropriate and proactive responses to unforeseen events or changes in project implementation that were not considered in the EIA process.

The mitigation measures identified within the EIA process are systematically addressed in the EMP, ensuring the minimisation of adverse environmental impacts to an acceptable level.

Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd must ensure that the implementation of the project complies with the requirements of all environmental authorisations, permits, and obligations emanating from relevant environmental legislation. This obligation is partly met through the development and the implementation of this EMP, and through its integration into the relevant contract documentation provided to parties responsible for construction and/or operation activities on the site. The adequacy and efficacy of implementation is to be monitored by an independent Environmental Control Officer (ECO). Since this EMP is part of the EIA process for Mutsho Solar PV4, it is important that this document be read in conjunction with the EIA report compiled for this project. This will contextualise the EMP and enable a thorough understanding of its role and purpose in the integrated environmental management process. Should there be a conflict of interpretation between this EMP and the Environmental Authorisation, the stipulations in the Environmental Authorisation shall prevail over that of the EMP, unless otherwise agreed by the authorities in writing. Similarly, any provisions in legislation overrule any provisions or interpretations within this EMP.

This EMP shall be binding on all the parties involved in the planning, construction and operational phases of the project, and shall be enforceable at all levels of contract and operational management within the project. The document must be adhered to and updated as relevant throughout the project life cycle.

## CHAPTER 4: STRUCTURE OF THIS EMPr

The first three chapters provide background to the EMPr and Mutsho Solar PV4, while the chapters which follow consider the following:

- » Planning and design activities;
- » Construction activities;
- » Operation activities; and
- » Decommissioning activities.

These chapters set out the procedures necessary for Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd as the project owner, to minimise environmental impacts and achieve environmental compliance. For each of the phases of implementation, an over-arching environmental **goal** is stated. In order to meet this goal, a number of **objectives** are listed. The EMPr has been structured in table format in order to show the links between the goals for each phase and their associated objectives, activities/risk sources, mitigation actions, monitoring requirements and performance indicators. A specific EMPr table has been established for each environmental objective. The information provided within the EMPr table for each objective is illustrated below:

**OBJECTIVE: Description of the objective, which is necessary to meet the overall goals; which take into account the findings of the EIA specialist studies**

<b>Project component/s</b>	List of project components affecting the objective, i.e.: » PV arrays; » Substation; » Access roads; and » Associated infrastructure.
<b>Potential Impact</b>	Brief description of potential environmental impact if objective is not met.
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	Description of activities which could impact on achieving objective.
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	Description of the target; include quantitative measures and/or dates of completion.

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
List specific action(s) required to meet the mitigation target/objective described above.	Who is responsible for the measures	Time periods for implementation of measures

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	Description of key indicator(s) that track progress/indicate the effectiveness of the management plan.
<b>Monitoring</b>	Mechanisms for monitoring compliance; the key monitoring actions required to check whether the objectives are being achieved, taking into consideration responsibility, frequency, methods and reporting.

The objectives and EMPr tables are required to be reviewed and possibly modified throughout the life of the solar facility whenever changes, such as the following, occur:

- » Planned activities change (i.e. in terms of the components of the solar facility).
- » Modification to or addition to environmental objectives and targets.
- » Additional or unforeseen environmental impacts are identified and additional measures are required to be included in the EMPr to prevent deterioration or further deterioration of the environment.
- » Relevant legal or other requirements are changed or introduced.
- » Significant progress has been made in achieving an objective or target such that it should be re-examined to determine if it is still relevant or should be modified, etc.

#### 4.1. Project Team

This EMPr was compiled by:

- » **Chantelle Geyer**, the principle author of this EMPr holds a BSc degree in Environmental Science, and a BSc Honours degree in Environmental Geology from the North-West University in Potchefstroom, South Africa. She is a Junior Environmental Consultant and specialises in basic assessments, environmental impact assessments, GIS-mapping, public participation administration, environmental management programmes, and environmental compliance.
- » **Jo-Anne Thomas**, the principle EAP on this project, is a registered EAP with the Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association of South Africa (EAPASA - 2019/726) and a Professional Natural Scientist with the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP). She provides technical input for projects in the environmental management field, specialising in Strategic Environmental Advice, Environmental Impact Assessment studies, environmental auditing and monitoring, environmental permitting, public participation, Environmental Management Plans and Programmes, environmental policy, strategy and guideline formulation, and integrated environmental management. Her key focus is on integration of the specialist environmental studies and findings into larger engineering-based projects, strategic assessment, and providing practical and achievable environmental management solutions and mitigation measures. Responsibilities for environmental studies include project management (including client and authority liaison and management of specialist teams); review and manipulation of data; identification and assessment of potential negative environmental impacts and benefits; review of specialist studies; and the identification of mitigation measures.

In order to adequately identify and assess potential environmental impacts associated with the proposed Mutsho Solar PV4, the following specialist sub-consultants have provided input into this EIA Report:

Specialist	Area of Expertise
Lindi Steyn and Andrew Husted of The Biodiversity Company	Ecology (including fauna, flora, avifauna, and wetlands)
Matthew Mamera and Andrew Husted of The Biodiversity Company	Soils and Agricultural Potential
Jenna Lavin of CTS Heritage	Heritage (including archaeology, palaeontology, and cultural landscape)
Jon Marshall of Environmental Planning and Design	Visual
Pierre van Jaarsveld of Urban Econ Development Economist (Pty) Ltd	Socio-Economic

The Savannah Environmental team have extensive knowledge and experience in environmental impact assessment and environmental management, having been involved in EIA processes for more than sixteen

(16) years. They have managed and drafted Environmental Management Programmes for other power generation projects throughout South Africa, including numerous wind and solar energy facilities.

## CHAPTER 5: ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

### **OBJECTIVE 1: Establish clear reporting, communication, and responsibilities during construction in relation to the overall implementation of the EMPr**

For the purposes of the EMPr, the generic roles that need to be defined are those of the:

- » Project Developer;
- » Project Manager/Site Manager;
- » Environmental Control Officer;
- » Contractors; and
- » Contractor's Safety, Health and Environment Representative/Environmental Officer.

It is acknowledged that the specific titles for these functions may vary once the project is implemented. The purpose of this section of the EMPr is to give a generic outline of what these roles typically entail. It is expected that this will be further defined during project implementation.

#### **i) The Developer**

As the Proponent, Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd must ensure that the implementation of the project complies with the requirements of all environmental authorisations and all other permits, and obligations emanating from other relevant environmental legislation.

#### **ii) Project Manager/Site Manager**

The Project Manager/Site Manager is responsible for overall management of project and EMPr implementation. The following tasks will fall within his/her responsibilities:

- » Be fully conversant with the EIA for the project, the EMPr, the conditions of the Environmental Authorisation (once issued), and all relevant environmental legislation.
- » Be fully knowledgeable with the contents of all relevant licences and permits.
- » Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr and implement these measures.
- » Ensure all specifications and legal constraints specifically with regards to the environment are highlighted to the Contractor(s) so that they are aware of these.
- » Monitor site activities on a daily basis for compliance.
- » Ensure that the EMPr is correctly implemented throughout the project by means of site inspections and meetings. This must be documented as part of the site meeting minutes.
- » Conduct internal audits of the construction site against the EMPr.
- » Confine the construction site to the demarcated area.
- » Rectify transgressions through the implementation of corrective action.



### iii) Environmental Control Officer

A suitably qualified Environmental Control Officer (ECO)<sup>2</sup> must be appointed by the project proponent prior to the commencement of any authorised activities and will be responsible for monitoring, reviewing and verifying compliance by the Contractor with the environmental specifications of the EMPr and the conditions of the Environmental Authorisation. Accordingly, the ECO will:

- » Be fully knowledgeable of the contents of the EIA Report.
- » Be fully knowledgeable of the contents of the conditions of the EA (once issued).
- » Be fully knowledgeable of the contents of the EMPr.
- » Be fully knowledgeable of all the licences and permits issued to the site.
- » Be fully knowledgeable of the contents of all relevant environmental legislation.
- » Ensure that the contents of the EMPr are communicated to the Contractors site staff and that the Site Manager and Contractors are constantly made aware of the contents through ongoing discussion.
- » Ensure that the compliance of the EMPr, EA and the legislation is monitored through regular and comprehensive inspection of the site and surrounding areas.
- » Ensure that the Site Manager has input into the review and acceptance of construction methods and method statements or site-specific plans.
- » Ensure that if the EMPr, EA and/or the legislation conditions, regulations or specifications are not followed then appropriate measures are undertaken to address any non-compliances (for example an ECO may cease construction or an activity to prevent a non-compliance from continuing).
- » Ensure that any non-compliance or remedial measures that need to be applied are reported.
- » Keep records of all activities on site, problems identified, transgressions noted and a task schedule of tasks undertaken by the ECO.
- » Independently report to the DFFE in terms of compliance with the specifications of the EMPr and conditions of the EA (once issued).
- » Keep records of all reports submitted to DFFE.

The ECO must be present full-time on site for the site preparation and initial clearing activities to ensure the correct demarcation of no-go areas, to facilitate environmental induction with construction staff and supervise any flora relocation and faunal rescue activities that may need to take place during the site clearing (i.e. during site establishment, and excavation of foundations). Thereafter, monthly compliance audits can be undertaken, provided that adequate compliance with the EA, environmental permits and EMPr is achieved. The developer should appoint a designated Environmental Officer (EO) to be present on-site to deal with any environmental issues as they arise. The ECO shall remain employed until all rehabilitation measures, as required for implementation due to construction damage, are completed and the site handed over for operation.

### iv) Contractors

The Lead Contractor is responsible for the following:

- » Ensure compliance with the EA, environmental permits and the EMPr at all times during construction.
- » Have the overall responsibility of the EMPr and its implementation.

---

<sup>2</sup> The ECO should have a relevant degree or technical diploma in environmental management and at least 2 years experience in the field

- » Ensure that all appointed contractors and sub-contractors are aware of the EMPr and their respective responsibilities.
- » Provide all necessary supervision during the execution of the project.
- » Comply with any special conditions as stipulated by landowners.
- » Inform and educate all employees about the environmental risks associated with the various activities to be undertaken, and highlight those activities which should be avoided during the construction process in order to minimise significant impacts to the environment.
- » Maintain an environmental register which keeps a record of all incidents which occur on the site during construction. These incidents include:
  - \* Public involvement / complaints
  - \* Health and safety incidents
  - \* Hazardous materials stored on site
  - \* Non-compliance incidents
  - \* Ensure that no actions are taken which will harm or may indirectly cause harm to the environment, and take steps to prevent pollution on the site.
- » Where construction activities are undertaken is close to any inhabited area, the necessary precautions shall be taken by the Contractor to safeguard the lives and property of the inhabitants.
- » Conduct audits to ensure compliance to the EMPr.
- » Ensure there is communication with the Project Manager, the ECO, and relevant discipline engineers on matters concerning the environment.
- » Should the Contractor require clarity on any aspect of the EMPr the Contractor must contact the Environmental Consultant/Officer for advice.

Contractors and Service Providers must be aware of the responsibilities in terms of the relevant environmental legislation and the contents of this EMPr. The contractor is responsible for informing employees and sub-contractors of their environmental obligations in terms of the environmental specifications, and for ensuring that employees are adequately experienced and properly trained in order to execute the works in a manner that will minimise environmental impacts. The contractor's obligations in this regard include the following:

- » Employees must have a basic understanding of the key environmental features of the construction site and the surrounding environment.
- » A copy of the EMPr must be easily accessible to all on-site staff members.
- » Employees must be familiar with the requirements of this EMPr and the environmental specifications as they apply to the construction of the solar facility.
- » Prior to commencing any site works, all employees and sub-contractors must have attended an environmental awareness training course which must provide staff with an appreciation of the project's environmental requirements, and how they are to be implemented.
- » Staff will be informed of environmental issues as deemed necessary by the ECO.

All contractors (including sub-contractors and staff) and service providers are ultimately responsible for:

- » Ensuring adherence to the environmental management specifications
- » Ensuring that Method Statements are submitted to the Site Manager (and ECO) for approval before any work is undertaken
- » Any lack of adherence to the above will be considered as non-compliance to the specifications of the EMPr
- » Ensuring that any instructions issued by the Site Manager on the advice of the ECO are adhered to

- » Ensuring that a report is tabled at each site meeting, which will document all incidents that have occurred during the period before the site meeting
- » Ensuring that a register is kept in the site office, which lists all transgressions issued by the ECO
- » Ensuring that a register of all public complaints is maintained
- » Ensuring that all employees, including those of sub-contractors receive training before the commencement of construction in order that they can constructively contribute towards the successful implementation of the EMPr (i.e. ensure their staff are appropriately trained as to the environmental obligations)

#### **v) Contractor's Safety, Health and Environment Representative/Environmental Officer**

The Contractor's Safety, Health and Environment (SHE) Representative/Environmental Officer (EO), employed by the Contractor, is responsible for managing the day-to-day on-site implementation of this EMPr, and for the compilation of regular (usually weekly) Monitoring Reports. In addition, the SHE/EO must act as liaison and advisor on all environmental and related issues and ensure that any complaints received from the public are duly recorded and forwarded to the Site Manager and Contractor.

The Contractor's SHE/EO should:

- » Be well versed in environmental matters.
- » Understand the relevant environmental legislation and processes.
- » Understand the hierarchy of Environmental Compliance Reporting, and the implications of Non-Compliance.
- » Know the background of the project and understand the implementation programme.
- » Be able to resolve conflicts and make recommendations on site in terms of the requirements of this Specification.
- » Keep accurate and detailed records of all EMPr-related activities on site.

### **OBJECTIVE 2: Establish clear reporting, communication, and responsibilities during operation in relation to overall implementation of the EMPr during operation**

Formal responsibilities are necessary to ensure that key procedures are executed during operation. Several professionals will form part of the operation team. For the purposes of the EMPr, the generic roles that need to be defined are those of the:

- » Operations Manager; and
- » Environmental Manager

It is acknowledged that the specific titles for these functions may vary once the project is implemented. The purpose of this section of the EMPr is to give a generic outline of what these roles typically entail. It is expected that this will be further defined during project implementation.

#### **i) Operations Manager**

The Operations Manager will:

- » Ensure that adequate resources (human, financial, technology) are made available and appropriately managed for the successful implementation of the operational EMPr.
- » Conduct annual basis reviews of the EMPr to evaluate its effectiveness.
- » Take appropriate action as a result of findings and recommendations in management reviews and audits.
- » Provide forums to communicate matters regarding environmental management.

## **ii) Environmental Manager**

The Environmental Manager will:

- » Develop and Implement an Environmental Management System (EMS) for the solar facility and associated infrastructure.
- » Manage and report on the solar facility's environmental performance.
- » Maintain a register of all known environmental impacts and manage the monitoring thereof.
- » Conduct internal environmental audits and co-ordinate external environmental audits.
- » Liaise with statutory bodies (such as the National and Provincial Department of Environmental Affairs and conservation authorities) on environmental performance and other issues.
- » Conduct environmental training and awareness for the employees who operate and maintain the solar facility.
- » Compile environmental policies and procedures.
- » Liaise with interested and affected parties on environmental issues of common concern.
- » Track and control the lodging of any complaints regarding environmental matters.

The Environmental Manager must provide fourteen (14) days written notification to the DFFE that the Mutsho Solar PV4 operation phase will commence.

## CHAPTER 6: MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME: PLANNING AND DESIGN

**Overall Goal:** undertake the pre-construction (planning and design) phase in a way that:

- » Ensures that the design of the solar facility responds to the identified environmental constraints and opportunities.
- » Ensures that pre-construction activities are undertaken in accordance with all relevant legislative requirements.
- » Ensures that adequate regard has been taken of identified environmental sensitivities, as well as any landowner and community concerns and that these are appropriately addressed through design and planning (where applicable).
- » Enables the construction activities to be undertaken without significant disruption to other land uses and activities in the area.
- » Ensures that the best environmental options are selected for the solar facility.

In order to meet this goal, the following objectives have been identified, together with necessary actions and monitoring requirements.

### 6.1. Objectives

**OBJECTIVE 1: To ensure that the design of the facility responds to the identified environmental constraints and opportunities**

If accepted by the DFFE, proposed development footprint detailed in **Figure 2.2**, must be implemented. Cognisance of sensitive areas defined in **Figure 2.3** and detailed within the EIA Report should be considered when undertaking the final design of the facility.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Design fails to respond optimally to the identified environmental considerations.</li> <li>» Employment creation for the construction, operation and decommissioning activities.</li> <li>» Design fails to respond optimally to the environmental considerations.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/risk sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Positioning of PV arrays and alignment of access roads and underground cabling where feasible.</li> <li>» Positioning of onsite substation.</li> <li>» Positioning of laydown areas.</li> <li>» Pre-construction activities, e.g. geotechnical investigations.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To ensure that the design of the solar facility responds to the identified environmental constraints and opportunities, including the constraints identified through the EIA process.</li> <li>» To ensure that pre-construction activities are undertaken in an environmentally friendly manner by e.g. avoiding identified sensitive areas.</li> <li>» Optimal planning of visual infrastructure to minimise visual impact.</li> </ul>

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Plan and conduct pre-construction activities in an environmentally responsible manner and in a manner that does not lead to unnecessary impacts and disturbance.	Developer EPC Contractor	Pre-construction
Consider design level mitigation measures recommended by the specialists, especially with respect to flora, fauna, aquatic ecology, avifauna, bats, and heritage sites, as detailed within the EIA report and relevant appendices.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
Following the final design of Mutsho Solar PV4, a revised layout must be submitted to DFFE for review and approval prior to commencing with construction. Micro-siting must take all recommended mitigation measures into consideration. No development is permitted within the identified no-go areas, other than that specified within the specialist studies.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
Ensure that laydown areas, construction camps and other temporary use areas are located in areas of low and medium sensitivity and are properly fenced or demarcated as appropriate and practically possible.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
Existing watercourse crossings should be utilised/upgraded as far as possible.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
Where new watercourse/wetland crossings are required, the engineering team must provide an effective means to minimise the potential upstream and downstream effects of sedimentation and erosion (erosion protection) as well minimise the loss of riparian vegetation (reduce footprint as much as possible). All crossings over watercourses/wetlands should be such that the flow within the channels is not impeded and should be constructed perpendicular to the river/wetland channel.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
Road infrastructure and cable alignments should coincide as far as possible to minimise the impact	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
The underground MV cabling, where crossing watercourses/wetlands, should be laid within the access roads (existing), or if not possible, within the shoulder or at least within 3m of the road shoulder. Ideally the construction disturbance footprint should be kept to an area no wider than 5m.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
Under no circumstances must new channels be created for flow diversion and conveyance purposes unless approved as part of an EA or WUL.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
All crossings over watercourses/wetlands should be such that the flow within the channels is not impeded and should be constructed perpendicular to the river channel/ and wetland feature.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
Infrastructure to avoid avifauna Very High Sensitivity areas, linear infrastructure (including roads) permitted.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
The minimum footprint areas of infrastructure should be used wherever possible, including road widths and lengths.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
Internal power lines should be buried wherever possible.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase



Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Avoid all high agricultural production land and other actively cultivated areas. Where avoidance is not feasible, stakeholder engagement should occur to compensate affected landowners	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
<p>The following buffer areas are recommended, and should be implemented for maintaining the freshwater resource features REC (Recommended Ecological Category) allowing the persistence of the current present ecological status as well as their functions and services.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» All drainage features with a High Ecological Importance: 15m buffers from the outer edge of the freshwater resource features.</li> <li>» All freshwater features with their buffer areas have been classified as High sensitivity and should be regarded as “No-Go” areas apart from the following activities and infrastructure which may be allowed (although restricted to an absolute minimum footprint): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» only activities relating to the route access and cabling;</li> <li>» the use/upgrade of existing roads and watercourse crossings are the preferred options;</li> </ul> </li> <li>» Where no suitable existing roads and watercourse crossings exist, the construction of new access roads and watercourse crossings can be allowed, however this should be deemed as a last resort.</li> <li>» All underground cabling should be laid either within access roads or next to access roads (as close as possible).</li> </ul>	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
A 200m no-go buffer must be implemented around the Boabab Room located at site V04.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase
A 100m no-go buffer must be implemented around site MOP115.	Developer EPC Contractor	Design phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Design meets the objectives and does not degrade the environment.</li> <li>» Design and layouts respond to the mitigation measures and recommendations in the EIA report.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Ensure that the design implemented meets the objectives and mitigation measures in the EIA report through review of the facility design by the Project Manager and ECO prior to the commencement of construction.</li> </ul>

## **OBJECTIVE 2: Ensure that relevant permits and site-specific plans are in place to manage impacts on the environment**

<b>Project Component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
----------------------------	--

<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Impact on identified sensitive areas.</li> <li>» Design fails to respond optimally to the environmental considerations.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/Risk Sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Positioning of all project components</li> <li>» Pre-construction activities, e.g. geotechnical investigations, site surveys of substation footprint, power line servitude and internal access roads and environmental walk-through surveys.</li> <li>» Positioning of temporary sites.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To ensure that the design of the power plant responds to the identified environmental constraints and opportunities.</li> <li>» To ensure that pre-construction activities are undertaken in an environmentally friendly manner.</li> <li>» To ensure that the design of the power plant responds to the identified constraints identified through pre-construction surveys.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/Control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Obtain any additional environmental permits required prior to the commencement of construction.	Developer	Pre-construction
Obtain abnormal load permits for transportation of project components to site (if required).	Contractor(s)	Prior to construction
A detailed geotechnical investigation is required for the design phase for all infrastructure components.	Developer	Design phase
Undertake ecological preconstruction walk-through of the final development footprint to identify and locate protected species that would be affected and that can be translocated.	Developer Specialist	Pre-construction
Pre-construction walk-through of the approved development footprint must be undertaken by an avifaunal specialist to ensure that sensitive habitats and species are avoided wherever possible.	Developer Specialist	Pre-construction
Obtain any additional environmental permits required. Copies of permits/licenses must be submitted to the Director: Environmental Impact Evaluation at the DFFE, and kept on site during the construction and operation phases of the project.	Developer	Design phase
Any individual of the protected plants that are present needs a relocation or destruction permit in order for any individual to be removed or destroyed due to the development. The necessary biodiversity permits must be obtained prior to removal of any species of concern.	Developer Specialist	Pre-construction
Search and rescue of species of conservation concern should be conducted prior to clearing activities.	Developer Contractor	Pre-construction
A stormwater management plan must be developed in the pre-construction phase, detailing the stormwater structures and management interventions that must be installed to manage the increase of surface water flows directly into any natural systems. The stormwater control systems must be inspected on an annual basis to ensure these are functional. Effective stormwater management must include effective stabilisation (gabions and Reno mattresses) of exposed soil and the re-vegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.	Contractor(s)	Design phase

Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Develop an Alien Invasive and Vegetation Rehabilitation Management Plan.	Developer	Pre-construction
Develop a detailed method statement for the implementation of the plant rescue and protection plan for the site (refer to <b>Appendix E</b> ).	Developer	Pre-construction
Develop a detailed method statement for the implementation of the re-vegetation and habitat rehabilitation plan for the site (refer to <b>Appendix D</b> ).	Developer	Pre-construction
Develop a detailed method statement for the implementation of the traffic and transportation management plan for the site (refer to <b>Appendix F</b> ).	Developer	Pre-construction
Develop an effective monitoring system to detect any leakage or spillage of all hazardous substances during their transportation, handling, use and storage. This must include precautionary measures to limit the possibility of oil and other toxic liquids from entering the soil or storm water systems.	Developer	Pre-construction
Prepare a detailed Fire Management Plan in collaboration with surrounding landowners.	Developer	Pre-construction
A comprehensive rehabilitation / monitoring plan must be developed in consultation with a specialist, and must be implemented from the project onset i.e. during the detailed design phase prior to construction, to ensure a net benefit to the environment within all areas that will remain undisturbed.	Developer Contractor Specialist	Pre-construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Layout does not destroy/degrade no-go areas.</li> <li>» No disturbance of no-go areas.</li> <li>» Permits are obtained and relevant conditions complied with.</li> <li>» Relevant management plans and Method Statements prepared and implemented.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Review of the design by the Project Manager and the ECO prior to the commencement of construction.</li> <li>» Monitor ongoing compliance with the EMPr.</li> </ul>

### **OBJECTIVE 3: Ensure compliance of required mitigation measures and recommendations by contractors**

<b>Project Component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Impact on identified sensitive areas.</li> <li>» Planning fails to respond optimally to the environmental considerations.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/Risk Sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Positioning of all project components</li> <li>» Pre-construction activities.</li> <li>» Positioning of temporary sites.</li> <li>» Employment and procurement procedures.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To ensure that appropriate planning is undertaken by the contractor to ensure compliance with the conditions of the EA and EMPr.</li> </ul>

	» To ensure that pre-construction and construction activities are undertaken in an environmentally friendly manner.
--	---

Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
The terms of this EMPr and the Environmental Authorisation must be included in all tender documentation and Contractors contracts.	Developer Contractor	Pre-construction
Organise local community meetings to advise the local labour on the project that is planned to be established and the jobs that can potentially be applied for.	Developer Contractor	Pre-construction
The developer should encourage the EPC contractor to increase the local procurement practices and promote the employment of people from local communities, as far as feasible, to maximise the benefits to the local economies.	Developer Contractor	Pre-construction
The developer should engage with local authorities and business organisations to investigate the possibility of procuring construction materials, goods and products from local suppliers were feasible.	Developer Contractor	Pre-construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	» Conditions of the EA and EMPr form part of all contracts.
	» Local employment and procurement are encouraged.
<b>Monitoring</b>	» Monitor ongoing compliance with the EMPr and method statements.

#### **OBJECTIVE 4: To ensure effective communication mechanisms**

It is important to maintain on-going communication with the public (including affected and surrounding landowners) during the construction and operation phases of Mutsho Solar PV4. Any issues and concerns raised should be addressed as far as possible in as short a timeframe as possible.

<b>Project component/s</b>	» PV arrays; » Substation; » Access roads; and » Associated infrastructure.
<b>Potential Impact</b>	» Impacts on affected and surrounding landowners and land uses.
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	» Activities associated with pre-construction phase. » Activities associated with construction of the solar facility. » Activities associated with operation.
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	» Effective communication with affected and surrounding landowners. » Addressing any issues and concerns raised as far as possible in as short a timeframe as possible.

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
<p>Compile and implement a grievance mechanism procedure for the public (including the affected and surrounding landowners) (using <b>Appendix B</b>) to be implemented during both the construction and operation phases of the solar facility and if applicable during decommissioning. This procedure should include the details of the contact person who will be receiving issues raised by interested and affected parties, and the process that will be followed to address issues. The mechanism must also include procedures to lodge complaints in order for the local community to express any complaints or grievances with the construction process. A Public Complaints register must be maintained by the Contractor to record all complaints and queries relating to the project and the actions taken to resolve the issue.</p> <p>A Project Specific Grievance Mechanism must be developed and implemented prior to construction.</p>	Developer Contractor O&M Operator	Pre-construction (construction procedure) Pre-operation (operation procedure)
Develop and implement a grievance mechanism for the construction, operation and closure phases of the solar facility for all employees, contractors, subcontractors and site personnel. This procedure should be in line with the South African Labour Law.	Developer Contractor O&M Operator	Pre-construction (construction procedure) Pre-operation (operation procedure)
Have a detailed consultation and communication plan with neighbouring property owners to keep them informed with regards to construction progress, issues and potential dangers	Developer	Pre-construction
Establish a line of communication and notify all stakeholders of the means of registering any issues, complaints or comments.	Developer	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	» Effective communication procedures in place for all phases as required.
<b>Monitoring</b>	» An incident reporting system used to record non-conformances to the EMPr. » Grievance mechanism procedures implemented. » Public complaints register developed and maintained.

## CHAPTER 7: MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME: CONSTRUCTION

**Overall Goal:** Undertake the construction phase in a way that:

- » Ensures that construction activities are properly managed in respect of environmental aspects and impacts.
- » Enables construction activities to be undertaken without significant disruption to other land uses and activities in the area, in particular concerning noise impacts, farming practices, traffic and road use, and effects on local residents.
- » Minimises the impact on the indigenous natural vegetation, protected tree species, and habitats of ecological value.
- » Minimises impacts on fauna using the site.
- » Minimises the impact on heritage sites should they be uncovered.
- » Ensures rehabilitation of disturbed areas following the execution of the works, such that residual environmental impacts are remediated or curtailed.

An environmental baseline must be established during the undertaking of construction activities, where possible.

### 7.1. Objectives

In order to meet the overall goal for construction, the following objectives, actions, and monitoring requirements have been identified.

#### **OBJECTIVE 1: Securing the site and site establishment**

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Hazards to landowners and public.</li> <li>» Security of materials.</li> <li>» Substantially increased damage to natural vegetation.</li> <li>» Potential impact on fauna and avifauna habitat.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/risk sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Open excavations (foundations and cable trenches).</li> <li>» Movement of construction employees, vehicles and plant equipment in the area and on-site.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To secure the site against unauthorised entry.</li> <li>» To protect members of the public/landowners/residents.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Secure the site, working areas and excavations in an appropriate manner. Adequate protective measures must be	Contractor EO	During site establishment Maintenance: for duration of Contract



Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
implemented to prevent unauthorised access to the working area and the internal access/haul routes.		
The Contractor must take all reasonable measures to ensure the safety of the public in the surrounding area. Where the public could be exposed to danger by any of the works or site activities, the Contractor must, as appropriate, provide suitable flagmen, barriers and/or warning signs in English and any other relevant indigenous languages, all to the approval of the Site Manager. All unattended open excavations shall be adequately demarcated and/or fenced.	Contractor	During site establishment Maintenance: for duration of Contract
Where necessary to control access, fence and secure the area and implement access control procedures.	Contractor	During site establishment Maintenance: for duration of Contract
Establish SABS 089: 1999 Part 1 approved bunded areas for the storage of hazardous materials and hazardous waste.	Contractor	During site establishment and during construction
Establish the necessary ablution facilities with chemical toilets and provide adequate sanitation facilities and ablutions for construction workers (1 toilet per every 15 workers) at appropriate locations on site. These must be situated outside of any delineated watercourses and pans/depressions or associated buffers.	Contractor	During site establishment and during construction
Water consumption requirements for the site for the construction if not obtained from an authorised water user within the area, must be authorised by the Department of Water and Sanitation.	Developer	Prior to water use
Supply adequate weather and vermin proof waste collection bins and skips (covered at minimum with secured netting or shade cloth) at sites where construction is being undertaken. Separate bins should be provided for general and hazardous waste. As far as possible, provision should be made for separation of waste for recycling.	Contractor	Site establishment, and duration of construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Site is secure and there is no unauthorised entry.</li> <li>» No members of the public/ landowners injured as a result of construction activities.</li> <li>» Fauna and flora are protected as far as practically possible.</li> <li>» Appropriate and adequate waste management and sanitation facilities provided at construction site.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Regular visual inspection of the fence for signs of deterioration/forced access.</li> <li>» An incident reporting system must be used to record non-conformances to the EMPr.</li> <li>» Public complaints register must be developed and maintained on site.</li> <li>» ECO/ EO to monitor all construction areas on a continuous basis until all construction is completed; immediate reporting back to the site manager.</li> <li>» ECO/ EO to address any infringements with responsible contractors as soon as these are recorded.</li> </ul>

## OBJECTIVE 2: Appropriate management of the construction site and construction workers

<b>Project Component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Damage to indigenous natural vegetation and sensitive areas.</li> <li>» Damage to and/or loss of topsoil (i.e. pollution, compaction etc.).</li> <li>» Impacts on the surrounding environment due to inadequate sanitation and waste removal facilities.</li> <li>» Pollution/contamination of the environment.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/Risk Sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Vegetation clearing and levelling of equipment storage area/s.</li> <li>» Access to and from the equipment storage area/s.</li> <li>» Ablution facilities.</li> <li>» Contractors not aware of the requirements of the EMPr, leading to unnecessary impacts on the surrounding environment.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Limit equipment storage within demarcated designated areas.</li> <li>» Ensure adequate sanitation facilities and waste management practices.</li> <li>» Ensure appropriate management of actions by on-site personnel in order to minimise impacts to the surrounding environment.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/Control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
To minimise impacts on the surrounding environment, contractors must be required to adopt a certain Code of Conduct and commit to restricting construction activities to areas within the development footprint. Contractors and their sub-contractors must be familiar with the conditions of the Environmental Authorisation, the EIA Report, and this EMPr, as well as the requirements of all relevant environmental legislation.	Contractors	Construction
Contractors must ensure that all workers are informed at the outset of the construction phase of the conditions contained on the Code of Conduct.	Contractor and sub-contractor/s	Pre-construction
Restrict the activities and movement of construction workers and vehicles to the immediate construction site and existing access roads.	Contractor	Construction
All construction vehicles must adhere to clearly defined and demarcated roads. No driving outside of the development boundary must be permitted.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure all construction equipment and vehicles are properly maintained at all times.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure proper health and safety plans in place during the construction period to ensure safety on and around site during construction	Specialist	Pre-construction
Ensure that construction workers are clearly identifiable. All workers must carry identification cards and wear identifiable clothing.	Contractor	Construction

Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Undertake pre-construction environmental induction for all construction staff on site to ensure that basic environmental principles are adhered to. This includes awareness to no littering, appropriate handling of pollution and chemical spills, avoiding fire hazards, minimising wildlife interactions, remaining within demarcated construction areas etc	Contractor	Construction
All personnel should undergo environmental induction with regards to fauna and in particular awareness about not harming or collecting species such as tortoises and snakes which are often persecuted out of fear or superstition, waste management and the importance of not undertaking activities that could result in pollution of those watercourses.	Contractor	Construction
Regular toolbox talks should be undertaken to ensure appropriate levels of environmental awareness.	Contractor	Construction
Contact details of emergency services must be prominently displayed on site.	Contractor	Construction
Contractor must provide adequate firefighting equipment on site and provide firefighting training to selected construction staff.	Contractor	Construction
Personnel trained in first aid must be on site to deal with smaller incidents that require medical attention.	Contractor	Construction
Road borders must be regularly maintained to ensure that vegetation remains short to serve as an effective firebreak. An emergency fire plan must be developed with emergency procedures in the event of a fire.	Contractor	Duration of construction
Strict control of the behaviour of construction workers must be implemented in terms of works near watercourses.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure waste storage facilities are maintained and emptied on a regular basis.	Contractor	Duration of construction
Ensure that rubble, litter, and disused construction materials are appropriately stored (if not removed daily) and then disposed regularly at licensed waste facilities.	Contractor	Duration of Contract
No liquid waste, including grey water, may be discharged into any water body or drainage line. All sewage disposal to take place at a registered and operational wastewater treatment works. Proof of disposal to be retained as proof of responsible disposal.	Contractor	Duration of construction
All contaminated water must be contained by means of careful run-off management on site.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure compliance with all national, regional and local legislation with regard to the storage, handling and disposal of hydrocarbons, chemicals, solvents and any other harmful and hazardous substances and materials.	Contractor	During construction.
Ensure ablution facilities are appropriately maintained. Ablutions must be cleaned regularly and associated waste disposed of at a registered/permitted waste disposal site. Ablutions must be removed from site when construction is completed.	Contractor and sub-contractor/s	Duration of contract

Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Cooking and eating of meals must take place in a designated area. No fires are allowed on site. No firewood or kindling may be gathered from the site or surrounds.	Contractor and sub-contractor/s	Duration of contract
All litter must be deposited in a clearly marked, closed, animal-proof disposal bin in the construction area. Particular attention needs to be paid to food waste.	Contractor and sub-contractor/s	Duration of contract
Keep a record of all hazardous substances stored on site. Clearly label all the containers storing hazardous waste.	Contractor	Duration of contract
A Method Statement must be compiled for the management of pests and vermin within the site, specifically relating to the canteen area if applicable.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure proper health and safety plans in place during the construction period to ensure safety on and around site during construction, including fencing of the property and site access restriction.	Contractor and sub-contractor/s	Pre-construction
All disturbed areas that are not used such as excess road widths, should be rehabilitated with locally occurring shrubs and grasses after construction to reduce the overall footprint of the development.	Contractor and sub-contractor/s	Construction
On completion of the construction phase, all construction workers must leave the site within one week of their contract ending.	Contractor and sub-contractor/s	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Code of Conduct drafted before commencement of the construction phase.</li> <li>» Appropriate training of all staff is undertaken prior to them commencing work on the construction site.</li> <li>» Ablution and waste removal facilities are in a good working order and do not pollute the environment due to mismanagement.</li> <li>» All areas are rehabilitated promptly after construction in an area is complete.</li> <li>» Excess vegetation clearing and levelling is not undertaken.</li> <li>» No complaints regarding contractor behaviour or habits.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Regular audits of the construction camps and areas of construction on site by the EO.</li> <li>» Proof of disposal of sewage at an appropriate licensed wastewater treatment works.</li> <li>» Proof of disposal of waste at an appropriate licensed waste disposal facility.</li> <li>» An incident reporting system must be used to record non-conformances to the EMPr.</li> <li>» Observation and supervision of Contractor practices throughout the construction phase by the EO.</li> <li>» Complaints will be investigated and, if appropriate, acted upon.</li> </ul>

### **OBJECTIVE 3: Maximise benefits and opportunities associated with the construction phase**

It is acknowledged that skilled personnel are required for the construction of the solar panels and associated infrastructure. However, where semi-skilled and unskilled labour is required, opportunities for local employment should be maximised as far as possible. Employment of locals and the involvement of local Small, Micro and Medium Enterprises (SMMEs) would enhance the social benefits associated with the solar

facility, even if the opportunities are only temporary. The procurement of local goods could furthermore result in positive economic spin-offs.

<b>Project component/s</b>	» Construction activities associated with the establishment of the solar facility, including associated infrastructure.
<b>Potential Impact</b>	» The opportunities and benefits associated with the creation of local employment and business should be maximised.
<b>Activities/risk sources</b>	» The employment of outside contractors to undertake the work and who make use of their own labour will reduce the employment and business opportunities for locals. Employment of local labour will maximise local employment opportunities.
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	» The Developer, in discussions with the local municipality, should aim to employ as many workers (skilled, semi-skilled / low-skilled) from the local areas/ towns, as possible. » The Developer should also develop a database of local BBBEE service providers.

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Where feasible, effort must be made to employ locally in order to create maximum benefit for the communities.	Contractor	Construction
In order to maximise the positive impact, the project company should provide training courses for employees where feasible to ensure that employees gain as much as possible from the work experience.	Contractor	Construction
Where feasible, effort must be made to employ local labour in order to create maximum benefit for the communities and limit in-migration.	Contractor	Construction
Train unemployed local community members with insufficient skills and increase absorption of local labour thereby decreasing in-migration.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	» Maximum amount of semi and unskilled labour locally sourced where possible. » Local suppliers and SMMEs contracted where possible. » Skills transfer facilitated where required. » Apprenticeship programmes established
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	» Contractors and appointed ECO must monitor indicators listed above to ensure that they have been met for the construction phase.

#### **OBJECTIVE 4: Control of noise pollution stemming from construction activities**

Various construction activities would be taking place during the development of the facility and may pose a noise risk to the closest receptors. These activities could include temporary or short-term activities where small equipment is used (such as the digging of trenches to lay underground cables). The impact of such activities is generally very low. Impacts may however occur where activities are undertaken at night.

<b>Project component/s</b>	» PV arrays; » Substation; » Access roads; and » Associated infrastructure.
----------------------------	--

<b>Potential Impact</b>	» Increased noise levels at potentially sensitive receptors.
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Any construction activities taking place within 500m from potentially noise sensitive developments (NSD).</li> <li>» Site preparation and earthworks.</li> <li>» Construction-related transport.</li> <li>» Foundations or plant equipment installation.</li> <li>» Building activities.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Ensure that maximum noise levels at potentially sensitive receptors are less than 65dBA.</li> <li>» Prevent the generation of disturbing or nuisance noises.</li> <li>» Ensure acceptable noise levels at surrounding stakeholders and potentially sensitive receptors.</li> <li>» Ensure compliance with the National Noise Control Regulations.</li> <li>» Ensure night-time noise levels less than 45 dBA.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
The contractor should minimise active equipment at night, planning the completion of noisiest activities (such as pile driving, rock breaking and excavation) during the daytime period.	EPC Contractor	Construction
Ensure that all equipment is maintained and fitted with the required noise abatement equipment.	EPC Contractor	Weekly inspection
The construction crew must abide by the local by-laws regarding noise.	EPC Contractor	Construction phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Construction activities do not change the existing ambient sound levels with more than 7dB.</li> <li>» Ensure that maximum noise levels at potentially sensitive receptors are less than 65 dBA.</li> <li>» No noise complaints are registered</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	» Monitoring of noise levels associated with construction activities, especially near to sensitive receptors.

## **OBJECTIVE 5: Management of dust and emissions and damage to roads**

During the construction phase, limited gaseous or particulate emissions (and dust) is anticipated from exhaust emissions from construction vehicles and equipment on-site, as well as vehicle entrained dust from the movement of vehicles on the internal access roads.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Dust impacts can occur from cleared areas and from vehicle movement along gravel roads.</li> <li>» Release of minor amounts of air pollutants (for example NO<sub>2</sub>, CO and SO<sub>2</sub>) from vehicles and construction equipment.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/risk sources</b>	» The movement of construction vehicles and their activities on the site.



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Clearing of vegetation and topsoil.</li> <li>» Excavation, grading and scraping.</li> <li>» Transport of materials, equipment and components.</li> <li>» Re-entrainment of deposited dust by vehicle movements.</li> <li>» Wind erosion from topsoil and spoil stockpiles and unsealed roads and surfaces.</li> <li>» Fuel burning from construction vehicles with combustion engines.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To avoid and or minimise the potential dust impacts associated with heavy vehicles, and also minimise damage to roads.</li> <li>» To ensure emissions from all vehicles are minimised, where possible, for the duration of the construction phase.</li> <li>» To minimise nuisance to the community and adjacent landowners from dust emissions and to comply with workplace health and safety requirements for the duration of the construction phase.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Reduce and control construction dust using approved dust suppression techniques as and when required (i.e. whenever dust becomes apparent).	Contractor	Construction phase
Vehicles and equipment must be maintained in a road-worthy condition at all times. Road worthy certificates must be in place for all heavy vehicles at the outset of the construction phase and updated on a monthly basis.	Contractor	Construction phase
Vehicles used to transport sand and building materials must be fitted with tarpaulins or covers when travelling on roads.	Contractor	Construction phase
Ensure vehicles adhere to speed limits on public roads and speed limits set within the site by the Site Manager.	Contractor Transportation contractor	Duration of contract
Ensure that damage to gravel public roads and access roads attributable to construction vehicles is repaired before completion of the construction phase.	EPC Contractor	Before completion of construction phase
Disturbed areas must be re-vegetated as soon as practicable after construction is complete in an area.	EPC Contractor	At completion of the construction phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Appropriate dust suppression measures implemented on site during the construction phase.</li> <li>» Drivers made aware of the potential safety issues and enforcement of strict speed limits when they are employed or before entering the site.</li> <li>» Road worthy certificates in place for all heavy vehicles at the outset of the construction phase and updated on a monthly basis.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The Developer and appointed EO must monitor indicators listed above to ensure that they have been met for the construction phase.</li> <li>» Immediate reporting by personnel of any potential or actual issues with nuisance dust or emissions to the Site Manager.</li> <li>» An incident reporting system must be used to record non-conformances to the EMP.</li> <li>» Public complaints register must be developed and maintained on site.</li> </ul>

## **OBJECTIVE 6: Conservation of the existing soil resource within the site and in the adjacent areas**

The natural soil on the site needs to be preserved as far as possible to minimise impacts on the environment. Soil degradation including erosion (by wind and water) and subsequent deposition elsewhere is of a concern. Uncontrolled run-off relating to construction activities (excessive wetting, etc.) will also lead to accelerated erosion. Degradation of the natural soil profile due to excavation, stockpiling, compaction, pollution and other construction activities will affect soil forming processes and associated ecosystems.

A set of strictly adhered to mitigation measures are required to be implemented in order to effectively limit the impact on the environment. The disturbed areas where human impact is likely are the focus of the mitigation measures laid out below.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Erosion and soil loss.</li> <li>» Increased runoff.</li> <li>» Downstream sedimentation.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/risk sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Rainfall and wind erosion of disturbed areas.</li> <li>» Excavation, stockpiling and compaction of soil.</li> <li>» Concentrated discharge of water from construction activity.</li> <li>» Stormwater run-off from sealed surfaces.</li> <li>» Mobile construction equipment movement on site.</li> <li>» Roadside drainage ditches.</li> <li>» Project related infrastructure, such as buildings, solar panels and fences.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To minimise erosion of soil from site during construction.</li> <li>» To minimise damage to vegetation by erosion or deposition.</li> <li>» To retain all topsoil with a stable soil surface</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Any erosion problems observed along access roads or any hardened/engineered surface should be rectified immediately and monitored thereafter to ensure that they do not re-occur.	Contractor	Construction
All bare areas (excluding agricultural land and the development footprint), affected by the development, should be re-vegetated with locally occurring species, to bind the soil and limit erosion potential where applicable.	Contractor	Construction
Re-instate as much of the eroded area to its pre-disturbed, "natural" geometry (no change in elevation and any banks not to be steepened) where possible.	Contractor	Construction
Construction of gabions and other stabilisation features to prevent erosion must be undertaken, if deemed necessary.	Contractor	Construction
Roads and other disturbed areas should be regularly monitored for erosion problems and problem areas should receive follow-up monitoring by the EO to assess the success of the remediation.	Contractor EO	Construction
Topsoil must be removed and stored separately from subsoil. Topsoil must be reapplied where appropriate as soon as possible in order to encourage and facilitate rapid regeneration of the natural vegetation on cleared areas.	Contractor	Construction

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Practical phased development and vegetation clearing must be practiced so that cleared areas are not left un-vegetated and vulnerable to erosion for extended periods of time.	Contractor	Construction
Only the proposed access roads as per the development footprint are to be used to reduce any unnecessary compaction.	Contractor	Construction
Stockpile topsoil for re-use in rehabilitation phase. Maintain stockpile shape and protect from erosion.	Contractor	Construction
All material stockpiles should be located outside freshwater resource features.	Contractor	Construction
Salvaging topsoil: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Topsoil must always be salvaged and stored separately from subsoil and lower-lying parent rock or other spoil material. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Topsoil stripping removes up to 30 cm or less of the upper soils.</li> <li>* In cultivated areas, depth of topsoil may increase and needs to be confirmed with the land owner.</li> </ul> </li> <li>» Prior to salvaging topsoil the depth, quality and characteristics of topsoil should be known for every management area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o This will give an indication of total volumes of topsoil that need to be stored to enable the proper planning and placement of topsoil storage.</li> <li>o Different types of topsoil – rocky soils and sands or loams must be stored separately.</li> </ul> </li> <li>» Topsoil should be removed (and stored) under dry conditions to avoid excessive compaction whenever topsoil will have to be stored for longer than one year.</li> </ul>	Contractor	Construction
Silt traps should be used where there is a danger of topsoil eroding and entering streams and other sensitive areas. These silt traps must be regularly monitored and maintained and replaced / repaired immediately as and when required. These measures should be regularly checked, maintained and repaired when required to ensure that they are effective.	Contractor	Construction
Excavated soils should be stockpiled on the upslope side of the excavated trench so that eroded sediments off the stockpile are washed back into the trench.	Contractor	Construction
Storing topsoil: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Viability of stored topsoil depends on moisture, temperature, oxygen, nutrients and time stored.</li> <li>» Rapid decomposition of organic material in warm, moist topsoil rapidly decreases microbial activity necessary for nutrient cycling, and reduces the amount of beneficial micro-organisms in the soil.</li> <li>» Stockpile location should ideally be in a disturbed but weed-free area.</li> <li>» Storage of all topsoil that is disturbed should be of a maximum height of 2m and the maximum length of time before re-use is 18 months.</li> </ul>	Contractor	Construction

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Topsoil handling should be reduced to stripping, piling (once), and re-application. Between the stockpiling and reapplication, stored topsoil should not undergo any further handling except control of erosion and (alien) invasive vegetation.</li> <li>» Where topsoil can be reapplied within six months to one year after excavation, it will be useful to store the topsoil as close as possible to the area of excavation and re-application, e.g. next to cabling trenches.</li> <li>» Do not mix overburden with topsoil stockpiles, as this will dilute the proportion of fertile soil (with less fertile subsoil or rock material).</li> <li>» Employ wind nets made from Hessian or similarly fibrous and biodegradable material, where required, to stabilise newly placed topsoil stockpiles and to reduce wind erosion.</li> <li>» In cases where topsoil has to be stored longer than 6 months or during the rainy season, soils should be kept as dry as possible and protected from erosion and degradation by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Preventing ponding on or between heaps of topsoil</li> <li>* Covering topsoil berms</li> <li>* Preventing all forms of contamination or pollution</li> <li>* Preventing any form of compaction</li> <li>* Monitoring the establishment of all invasive vegetation and removing such if it appears</li> <li>* Keeping slopes of topsoil at a maximal 2:1 ratio</li> <li>* Monitoring and mitigating erosion where it appears</li> </ul> </li> <li>» Where topsoil needs to be stored in excess of one year, it is recommended to either cover the topsoil or allow an indigenous grass cover to grow on it – if this does not happen spontaneously, seeding should be considered.</li> </ul>		
Spillages of cement to be cleaned up immediately and disposed or re-used in the construction process.	Contractor	Construction
Spill kits to be kept on active parts of the construction site and at site offices.	Contractor	Construction
Cement batching to take place in designated areas only, as approved on site layout (if applicable).	Contractor	Construction
Excavated soils will need to be replaced in the same order as excavated from the trench, i.e. sub-soil must be replaced first and topsoil must be replaced last (this will maximise opportunity for re-vegetation of disturbed areas).	Contractor	Construction
Re-applied topsoil needs to be re-vegetated as soon as possible.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure battery transport and installation by accredited staff / contractors.	Contractor	Construction
Compile (and adhere to) a procedure for the safe handling of battery cells during transport and installation.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Minimal level of soil erosion around site.</li> <li>» Minimal level of soil degradation.</li> <li>» No activity outside demarcated areas.</li> </ul>
------------------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Progressive return of disturbed and rehabilitated areas to the desired end state.</li> <li>» No indications of visible topsoil loss.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Continual inspections of the site by the EO.</li> <li>» Reporting of ineffective sediment control systems and rectification as soon as possible.</li> <li>» If soil loss is suspected, acceleration of soil conservation and rehabilitation measures must be implemented.</li> </ul>

### **OBJECTIVE 7: Minimise impacts on sensitive areas and plant species**

Four habitat units were identified during the assessment and included closed woodland, a rocky area, watercourses, and mopane bushveld. The sensitivity of these habitats ranged from high to medium with the closed woodland, rocky area and watercourses regarded as high sensitivity due to the species recorded and the role of this intact unique habitat to biodiversity, whilst the mopane bushveld is regarded as having a medium sensitivity.

A total of 72 plant species were found within the project/study area, which consisted of 67 native, 0 Red List, 4 protected, 0 SA endemic, 0 alien, and 1 NEM:BA listed invasive species.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Loss of plant cover leading to loss of faunal habitat and loss of specimens of protected plants.</li> <li>» Soil erosion.</li> <li>» Indirect impacts on downslope freshwater resource features.</li> <li>» Increased fire hazards.</li> <li>» Increased water use.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Site preparation and clearing.</li> <li>» Soil disturbance</li> <li>» Introduction of plant propagules with people and vehicles.</li> <li>» Activities outside of designated construction areas.</li> <li>» Driving off designated routes.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To limit construction activities to designated areas.</li> <li>» Implement invasive plant clearing prior to construction, but after site demarcation.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Communicate clearly to all contractors that no disturbance outside the demarcated areas will be tolerated.	Contractor	Construction
Demarcate all areas to be cleared with construction tape or other appropriate and effective means. However, caution should be exercised to avoid using material that might entangle fauna.	Contractor	Construction
Before construction commences individuals of listed species within the development footprint that would be affected, should be counted and marked and translocated where deemed	Contractor	Pre-construction Construction

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
necessary by the ecologist conducting the pre-construction walk-through survey, and according to the recommended ratios.		
Compile and implement an alien vegetation management plan from the onset of construction. The plan must identify areas for action (if any) and prescribe the necessary removal methods and frequencies to be applied. This plan must also prescribe a monitoring plan and be updated as/when new data is collated;	Contractor	Pre-construction Construction
A protected tree assessment must be completed prior to the commencement of the project;	Contractor	Pre-construction Construction
High visibility flags must be placed near any protected plants in order to avoid any damage or destruction of the species. If left undisturbed the sensitivity and importance of these species needs to be part of the environmental awareness program	Contractor	Pre-construction Construction
Any individuals of protected species affected by and observed within the development footprint during construction should be translocated under the supervision of the ECO and/or Contractor's Environmental Officer (EO).	Contractor ECO EO	Construction
No plants may be translocated or otherwise uprooted or disturbed for rehabilitation or other purpose without express permission from the ECO and or Contractor's EO.	Contractor ECO EO	Construction
No fires should be allowed within the site as there is a risk of runaway veld fires.	Contractor	Construction
Wherever excavation is necessary, topsoil should be set aside and replaced after construction to encourage natural regeneration of the local indigenous species.	Contractor	Construction
Regular monitoring for alien plants within the development footprint as well as adjacent areas which receive runoff from the facility must be undertaken as these are also likely to be prone to invasion problems.	Contractor	Construction
Regular alien clearing should be conducted using the best-practice methods for the species concerned. The use of herbicides should be avoided as far as possible.	Contractor	Construction
Vegetation clearing should occur in a phased manner in accordance with the construction programme to minimise erosion and/or run-off.	Contractor	Construction
ECO and/or Contractor's EO to provide supervision and oversight of vegetation clearing activities and other activities which may cause damage to the environment, especially at the initiation of the project, when the majority of vegetation clearing is taking place.	Contractor EO ECO	Construction
Unnecessary impacts on surrounding natural vegetation must be avoided. The construction impacts must be contained to the footprint of the solar facility.	Contractor	Construction
There should be reduced activity at the site after large rainfall events when the soils are wet. No driving off of hardened roads should occur immediately following large rainfall events until soils have dried out and the risk of bogging down has decreased.	Contractor	Construction



Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Where new roads need to be constructed, the existing road infrastructure should be rationalised and any unnecessary roads decommissioned and rehabilitated to reduce the disturbance of the area within the river beds.	Contractor	Construction
Where possible, culvert bases must be placed as close as possible with natural levels in mind so that these don't form additional steps / barriers.	Contractor	Construction
The duration of construction work within the watercourses/wetlands must be minimised as far as practically possible through proper planning and phasing.	Contractor	Construction
All vehicles to remain on demarcated roads and no unnecessary driving in the veld outside these areas should be allowed.	Contractor	Construction
Avoid creating conditions in which alien plants may become established: » Keep disturbance of indigenous vegetation to a minimum » Rehabilitate disturbed areas as quickly as possible once construction is complete in an area » Do not import soil from areas with alien plants.	Contractor	Construction
Establish an on-going monitoring programme to detect, quantify and remove any alien species that may become established and identify the problem species (as per Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act and Act 43 of 1983 and NEM: Biodiversity Act).	Contractor	Construction
Immediately control any alien plants that become established using registered control methods appropriate for the particular species in question. Where necessary, obtain an opinion from a registered Pest Control Officer.	Contractor	Construction
All alien plant re-growth must be monitored and should these alien plants reoccur these plants should be re-eradicated. The scale of the development does however not warrant the use of a Landscape Architect and / or Landscape Contractor.	Contractor	Construction
The use of herbicides and pesticides and other related horticultural chemicals should be carefully controlled and only applied by personnel adequately certified to apply pesticides and herbicides (a registered Pest Control Officer). It must be ensured that WHO Recommended Classification of Pesticides by Hazard Class 1a (extremely hazardous) or 1b (highly hazardous) are not purchased, stored or used on site along with any other nationally or internationally similarly restricted/banned products.	Contractor	Construction
A registered Pest Control Officer must be appointed to implement the invasive alien plants and weeds management plan. The Pest Control Officer must supervise the clearing team to ensure compliance with the invasive alien plants and weeds management plan.	Contractor	Construction
All cleared areas should be revegetated with indigenous perennial species from the local area.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» No disturbance outside of designated work areas.</li> <li>» Limited alien infestation within project control area.</li> </ul>
------------------------------	--

	» Construction activities restricted to the development footprint.
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	» Observation of vegetation clearing activities by the EO throughout the construction phase. » Monitoring of alien plant establishment within the site on an on-going basis.

## **OBJECTIVE 8: Protection of terrestrial fauna**

Thirteen (13) mammal species were observed during the survey of the project area based on either direct observation or the presence of visual tracks and signs. None of the species recorded are regarded as SCC. Three species of reptiles were recorded in the project area during survey period. However, there is the possibility of at least several species being present, as certain reptile species are secretive and longer-term surveys are required in order to ensure adequate sampling. No amphibian species were recorded during the survey period. None of the herpetofauna species recorded are regarded as threatened.

<b>Project component/s</b>	» PV arrays; » Substation; » Access roads; and » Associated infrastructure.
<b>Potential Impact</b>	» Vegetation clearance and associated impacts on faunal habitats. » Traffic to and from site.
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	» Site preparation and earthworks. » Foundations or plant equipment installation. » Mobile construction equipment movement on site. » Access road construction activities. » Substation construction facilities.
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	» To minimise footprints of habitat destruction. » To minimise disturbance to resident and visitor faunal species.

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
The extent of clearing and disturbance to the vegetation must be kept to a minimum so that impact on fauna and their habitats is restricted.	Contractor	Construction
During construction any fauna directly threatened by the construction activities should be removed to a safe location by a suitably qualified person.	Contractor	Construction
The illegal collection, hunting or harvesting of any plants or animals at the site should be strictly forbidden. Personnel should not be allowed to wander off of the construction site.	Contractor	Construction
Employees should be trained (e.g. during toolbox talks) that poisonous animals should not be killed and if encountered the ECO/ EO should be informed.	Developer EPC Contractor	Duration of contract
If any parts of the site such as construction camps must be lit at night, this should be done with low-UV type lights (such as most LEDs) as far as practically possible, which do not attract insects and which should be directed downwards.	Contractor	Construction

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
All construction vehicles on site should adhere to a low speed limit (30km/h) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises.	Contractor	Construction
Construction vehicles limited to a minimal footprint on site (no movement outside of the demarcated footprint).	Contractor	Construction
If any parts of the facility are to be fenced, then no electrified strands should be placed within 30cm of the ground as some species such as tortoises are susceptible to electrocution from electric fences as they do not move away when electrocuted but rather adopt defensive behaviour and are killed by repeated shocks.	Contractor	Duration of contract
Signs must be put up stating that should any person be found poaching any species they will be fined.	Contractor	Construction
Construction must take place in the winter months as much is feasible.	Contractor	Construction
Any holes/deep excavations must done in a progressive manner on a needs basis only. No holes/excavations may be left open overnight. In the event holes/excavations are required to remain open overnight, these areas must be covered to prevent fauna falling into these areas.	Contractor	Construction
Where possible, work should be restricted to one area at a time and be systematic. This is to reduce the number and extent of on-site activities, allowing fauna to move off as the project progresses. This will give the smaller mammals and reptiles a chance to weather the disturbance in an undisturbed zone close to their natural territories.	Contractor	Construction Duration of contract
Prior to vegetation clearing activities, the area to be cleared should be walked on foot by 1-2 individuals to create a disturbance in order for fauna to move off. Sites should be disturbed only prior to the area having to be cleared, not more than 1 day in advance.	Contractor	Construction
The timing between clearing of an area and subsequent development must be minimized to avoid fauna from re-entering the site to be disturbed.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» No disturbance outside of designated work areas.</li> <li>» Minimised clearing of existing/natural vegetation and habitats for fauna.</li> <li>» Limited impacts on faunal species (i.e. noted/recorded fatalities), especially those of conservation concern.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Observation of vegetation clearing activities by the EO throughout construction phase.</li> <li>» Supervision of all clearing and earthworks by the EO.</li> </ul>

## OBJECTIVE 9: Protection of avifauna

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> </ul>
----------------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Disturbance of birds (e.g. destruction of habitat).</li> <li>» Displacement of birds.</li> <li>» Collision with project components.</li> <li>» Traffic to and from site.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Site preparation and earthworks.</li> <li>» Foundations or plant equipment installation.</li> <li>» Mobile construction equipment movement on site.</li> <li>» Access road construction activities.</li> <li>» Substation construction facilities.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To minimise footprints of habitat destruction.</li> </ul>
<b>Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To minimise disturbance to resident and visitor avifaunal species.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
The extent of clearing and disturbance to the vegetation must be kept to a minimum so that impact on avifauna and their habitats is restricted.	Contractor	Construction
Construction camps should be lit with as little light as practically possible, with the lights directed downwards where appropriate	Contractor	Construction
The movement of construction personnel should be restricted to the construction areas on the project site.	Contractor	Construction
No dogs or cats other than those of the landowners should be allowed on site.	Contractor	Construction
The appointed Environmental Officer must be trained to identify the potential Red Data species as well as the signs that indicate possible breeding by these species.	Contractor EO	Construction
If any avifaunal SCCs are confirmed to be breeding (e.g. if a nest site is found), construction activities within 500 m of the breeding site must cease, and an avifaunal specialist is to be contacted immediately for further assessment of the situation and instruction on how to proceed.	Contractor	Construction
Any holes dug should not be left open for extended periods of time to prevent entrapment by ground dwelling avifauna or their young and only be dug when required and filled in soon thereafter.	Contractor	Construction
The development footprint must be used for storage and the contractors' camps as well. This may not be outside the direct project area to ensure the disturbance area is as small as possible.	Contractor EO	Construction
Where possible, existing access routes and walking paths must be made use of.	Contractor EO	Construction and Operation
The areas to be developed must be specifically demarcated to prevent movement of staff or any individual into the surrounding environments. Signs must be put up to enforce this.	Contractor EO	Construction and Operation
All personnel should undergo environmental induction with regards to avifauna and in particular awareness about not harming, collecting, or hunting terrestrial species (e.g., guineafowl and francolin), and owls, which are often	EO	Life of the Operation

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
persecuted out of superstition. Signs must be put up to enforce this.		
The duration of the construction should be kept to a minimum to avoid disturbing avifauna.	Contractor EO	Construction and Operation
Outside lighting should be designed and limited to minimize impacts on fauna. All outside lighting should be directed away from highly sensitive areas. Fluorescent and mercury vapor lighting should be avoided and sodium vapor (red/green) lights should be used wherever possible.	Contractor EO	Construction and Operation
All construction and maintenance motor vehicle operators should undergo an environmental induction that includes instruction on the need to comply with speed limit (30km/h), to respect all forms of wildlife. Speed limits must still be enforced to ensure that road killings and erosion is limited.	Health and Safety Officer	Life of the Operation
Schedule or limit (where feasible) activities and operations during least sensitive periods (June – August), to avoid migration, nesting and breeding seasons	Contractor EO	Construction and Operation
All project activities must be undertaken with appropriate noise mitigation measures to avoid disturbance to avifauna population in the region	Contractor EO	Construction and Operation
All areas to be developed must be walked through prior to any activity to ensure no nests or avifauna species are found in the area. Should any Species of Conservation Concern be found and not move out of the area, or their nest be found in the area a suitably qualified specialist must be consulted to advise on the correct actions to be taken.	Contractor EO	Planning, Construction and Decommissioning
The design of the proposed PV must be of a type or similar structure as endorsed by the Eskom-EWT Strategic Partnership on Birds and Energy, considering the mitigation guidelines recommended by Birdlife South Africa (Jenkins et al., 2015).	Developer EO	Planning and construction
Infrastructure should be consolidated where possible in order to minimise the amount of ground and air space used.	Developer EO	Planning and construction
All the parts of the infrastructure must be nest proofed and anti-perch devices placed on areas that can lead to electrocution	Developer EO	Planning and construction
Use environmentally friendly cleaning and dust suppressant products	Contractor EO	Construction and Operation
Fencing mitigations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Top 2 strands must be smooth wire</li> <li>Routinely retention loose wires</li> <li>Minimum 30cm between wires</li> <li>Place markers on fences</li> </ul>	Contractor EO	Planning, construction, and operation
As far as possible power cables within the project area should be thoroughly insulated and preferably buried.	Contractor EO	Planning and construction
Any exposed parts must be covered (insulated) to reduce electrocution risk	Contractor EO	Planning and construction
White strips should be placed along the edges of the panels, to reduce similarity to water and deter birds and insects (Horvath et	Contractor EO	Planning and construction

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
al, 2010). Consider the use of bird deterrent devices to limit collision risk.		

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» No disturbance outside of designated work areas.</li> <li>» Minimised clearing of existing/natural vegetation and habitats for avifauna.</li> <li>» Limited impacts on avifaunal species (i.e. noted/recorded fatalities), especially those of conservation concern.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Observation of vegetation clearing activities by the EO throughout construction phase.</li> <li>» Supervision of all clearing and earthworks by the EO.</li> </ul>

#### **OBJECTIVE 10: Minimise impacts on heritage sites during the construction of the solar facility**

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Excavations of solar panel mounting structure foundations.</li> <li>» Excavations of trenches for the installation of cabling and infrastructure.</li> <li>» Excavation of substation foundations.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Loss of archaeological artefacts.</li> <li>» Loss of fossil resources.</li> <li>» Impacts on heritage sites.</li> <li>» Impacts on graves or burial sites.</li> <li>» Loss of resources going unnoticed.</li> <li>» Destruction of resources</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» All bulk earthworks.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To facilitate the likelihood of noticing heritage resources and ensure appropriate actions in terms of the relevant legislation</li> </ul>

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The Chance Fossil Finds Procedure must be implemented for the duration of construction activities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Training: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Workmen and foremen need to be trained in the procedure to follow in instances of accidental discovery of fossil material, in a similar way to the Health and Safety protocol. A brief introduction to the process to follow in the event of possible accidental discovery of fossils should be conducted by the designated Environmental Control Officer (ECO) for the project, or the foreman or site agent in the absence of the ECO. It is recommended that copies of the attached poster and procedure are printed out and displayed at the site office so that workmen may familiarise themselves with them and are thereby prepared in the event that accidental discovery of fossil material takes place.</li> </ul> </li> <li>○ Actions to be undertaken: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* One person in the staff must be identified and appointed as responsible for the implementation of</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Contractor	Construction



Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
<p>the protocol in instances of accidental fossil discovery and must report to the ECO or site agent. If the ECO or site agent is not present on site, then the responsible person on site should follow the protocol correctly in order to not jeopardize the conservation and well-being of the fossil material.</p> <p>* Once a workman notices possible fossil material, he/she should report this to the ECO or site agent. Procedure to follow if it is likely that the material identified is a fossil:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The ECO or site agent must ensure that all work ceases immediately in the vicinity of the area where the fossil or fossils have been found.</li> <li>- The ECO or site agent must inform SAHRA of the find immediately. This information must include photographs of the findings and GPS co-ordinates.</li> <li>- The ECO or site agent must compile a Preliminary Report and fill in the attached Fossil Discoveries: Preliminary Record Form within 24 hours without removing the fossil from its original position. The Preliminary Report records basic information about the find including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ The date.</li> <li>❖ A description of the discovery.</li> <li>❖ A description of the fossil and its extent (e.g., position and depth of find).</li> <li>❖ Where and how the find has been stored.</li> <li>❖ Photographs to accompany the preliminary report: ( <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ A scale must be used.</li> <li>✓ Photos of location from several angles.</li> <li>✓ Photos of vertical section should be provided.</li> <li>✓ Digital images of hole showing vertical section (side).</li> <li>✓ Digital images of fossil or fossils.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Upon receipt of this Preliminary Report, SAHRA will inform the ECO or site agent whether or not a rescue excavation or rescue collection by a palaeontologist is necessary.</p> <p>* Exposed finds must be stabilised where they are unstable and the site capped, e.g. with a plastic sheet or sand bags. This protection should allow for the later excavation of the finds with due scientific care and diligence. SAHRA can advise on the most appropriate method for stabilisation.</p>		

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* If the find cannot be stabilised, the fossil may be collect with extreme care by the ECO or the site agent and put aside and protected until SAHRA advises on further action. Finds collected in this way must be safely and securely stored in tissue paper and an appropriate box. Care must be taken to remove the all fossil material and any breakage of fossil material must be avoided at all costs.</li> <li>* No work may continue in the vicinity of the find until SAHRA has indicated, in writing, that it is appropriate to proceed.</li> </ul>		
Should any buried archaeological resources or human remain or burials be uncovered during the course of development activities, work must cease in the vicinity of these finds. The South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) must be contacted immediately in order to determine an appropriate way forward.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Reporting of and liaison about possible finds of heritage resources.</li> <li>» Heritage resources noticed and rescued.</li> <li>» All heritage items located are dealt with as per the legislative guidelines.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Ensure staff are aware of heritage resources and the procedure to follow when found.</li> <li>» EO to conduct inspections of open excavations.</li> </ul>

#### **OBJECTIVE 11: Minimisation of visual impacts associated with construction**

During construction heavy vehicles, components, cranes, equipment and construction crews will frequent the area and may cause, at the very least, a visual nuisance to landowners and residents in the area as well as road users.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Construction site.</li> <li>» Transportation of staff and equipment.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Visual impact of general construction activities, and the potential scarring of the landscape due to vegetation clearing and the resulting erosion.</li> <li>» Construction traffic.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The viewing of visual scarring by observers in the vicinity of the solar facility or from the roads in the surrounding area.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Minimal disturbance to vegetation cover in close vicinity of the solar facility and its related infrastructure.</li> <li>» Minimised construction traffic, where possible.</li> <li>» Minimal visual intrusion by construction activities and intact vegetation cover outside of the immediate construction work areas.</li> </ul>

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Minimise disturbance of the land beneath the solar panels to ensure that associated infrastructure is sited in such a way that it minimises visual impact	Contractor	Construction
Retain and maintain natural vegetation in all areas outside of the development footprint.	Contractor	Construction
Should glare prove problematic which is more likely with a tracking system, the trackers need to be programmed to prevent early morning reflection towards the roads.	Contractor	Construction
Restrict the activities and movement of construction workers and vehicles to the immediate construction site and existing access roads.	Contractor	Construction
Restrict construction activities to daylight hours whenever possible in order to reduce lighting impacts.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure that rubble, litter, and disused construction materials are appropriately stored (if not removed daily) and then disposed regularly at licensed waste facilities.	Contractor	Construction
Install screens around the construction site to reduce the visual impact of construction on surrounding properties	Contractor	Construction
Rehabilitate all disturbed areas, construction areas, servitudes etc. immediately after the completion of construction works.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Construction site maintained in a neat and tidy condition.</li> <li>» Site appropriately rehabilitated after construction is complete.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Monitoring of vegetation clearing during construction by EO.</li> <li>» Monitoring of rehabilitated areas quarterly for at least a year following the end of construction (by contractor as part of construction contract).</li> </ul>

## OBJECTIVE 12: Appropriate handling and management of waste

The construction of the solar facility and associated infrastructure will involve the generation of various wastes. In order to manage the wastes effectively, guidelines for the assessment, classification, and management of wastes, along with industry principles for minimising construction wastes must be implemented. The main wastes expected to be generated by the construction activities include:

- » general solid waste
- » hazardous waste
- » inert waste (rock and soil)
- » liquid waste (including grey water and sewage)

<b>Project Component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Inefficient use of resources resulting in excessive waste generation.</li> <li>» Litter or contamination of the site or water through poor waste management practices.</li> </ul>

<b>Activity/Risk Source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Packaging.</li> <li>» Other construction wastes.</li> <li>» Hydrocarbon use and storage.</li> <li>» Spoil material from excavation, earthworks and site preparation.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To comply with waste management legislation.</li> <li>» To minimise production of waste.</li> <li>» To ensure appropriate waste storage and disposal.</li> <li>» To avoid environmental harm from waste disposal.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/Control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Implement an integrated waste management approach that is based on waste minimisation and incorporates reduction, recycling, re-use and disposal where appropriate. Where solid waste is disposed of, such disposal shall only occur at an appropriately licensed landfill.	Contractor	Construction
Construction method and materials must be carefully considered in view of waste reduction, re-use, and recycling opportunities.	Contractor	Construction
Construction contractors must provide specific detailed waste management plans to deal with all waste streams.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure that no litter, refuse, wastes, rubbish, rubble, debris and builders wastes generated on the premises is placed, dumped or deposited on adjacent/surrounding properties.	Contractor	Construction
Specific areas must be designated on-site for the temporary management of various waste streams, i.e. general refuse, construction waste (wood and metal scrap), and contaminated waste as required. Location of such areas must seek to minimise the potential for impact on the surrounding environment, including prevention of contaminated runoff, seepage, and vermin control.	Contractor	Construction
Where practically possible, construction and general wastes on-site must be reused or recycled. Bins and skips must be available on-site for collection, separation, and storage of waste streams (such as wood, metals, general refuse etc.).	Contractor	Construction
Disposal of waste must be in accordance with relevant legislative requirements, including the use of licensed contractors.	Contractor	Construction
Uncontaminated waste must be removed at least weekly for disposal, if feasible; other wastes must be removed for recycling/ disposal at an appropriate frequency.	Contractor	Construction
Hydrocarbon waste must be contained and stored in sealed containers within an appropriately bunded area and clearly labelled. This must be regularly removed and recycled (where possible) or disposed of at an appropriately licensed landfill site.	Contractor	Construction
Waste must be stored in accordance with the relevant legislative requirements.	Contractor	Construction
Waste must be kept to a minimum and must be transported by approved waste transporters to sites designated for their disposal.	Contractor	Construction
No liquid waste, including grey water, may be discharged into any water body or drainage line. All sewage disposal to take place at a registered and operational wastewater treatment works.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Mitigation: Action/Control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
All liquid wastes must be contained in appropriately sealed vessels/ponds within the footprint of the development, and be disposed of at a designated waste management facility.	Contractor	Construction
Documentation (waste manifest) must be maintained detailing the quantity, nature, and fate of any regulated waste. Waste disposal records must be available for review at any time.	Contractor	Construction
Regularly serviced chemical toilet facilities and/or septic tank must be used to ensure appropriate control of sewage.	Contractor	Construction
Daily inspection of all chemical toilets and septic tanks must be performed by environmental representatives on site.	Contractor	Construction
In the event where sewage is discharged into the environment, all contaminated vegetation/ rock and soil must be removed immediately and treated as hazardous waste.	Contractor	Construction
Under no circumstances may waste be burnt or buried on site.	Contractor	Construction
Litter generated by the construction crew must be collected in rubbish bins and disposed of weekly, or at an appropriate frequency, at registered waste disposal sites.	Contractor	Construction
Upon the completion of construction, the area must be cleared of potentially polluting materials (including chemical toilets). Spoil stockpiles must also be removed and appropriately disposed of or the materials re-used for an appropriate purpose.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» No complaints received regarding waste on site or indiscriminate dumping.</li> <li>» Internal site audits ensuring that waste segregation, recycling and reuse is occurring appropriately.</li> <li>» Provision of all appropriate waste manifests for all waste streams.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Observation and supervision of waste management practices throughout construction phase.</li> <li>» Waste collection will be monitored on a regular basis.</li> <li>» Waste documentation completed.</li> <li>» Proof of disposal of sewage at an appropriate wastewater treatment works.</li> <li>» A complaints register will be maintained, in which any complaints from the community will be logged. Complaints will be investigated and, if appropriate, acted upon.</li> <li>» An incident reporting system will be used to record non-conformances to the EMP.</li> </ul>

### **OBJECTIVE 13: Appropriate handling and storage of chemicals, hazardous substances**

The construction phase may involve the storage and handling of a variety of chemicals including adhesives, abrasives, oils and lubricants, paints and solvents.

<b>Project Component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Release of contaminated water from contact with spilled chemicals.</li> <li>» Generation of contaminated wastes from used chemical containers.</li> <li>» Soil pollution.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/Risk Source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Vehicles associated with site preparation and earthworks.</li> <li>» Construction activities of area and linear infrastructure.</li> <li>» Hydrocarbon spills by vehicles and machinery during levelling, vegetation clearance and transport of workers, materials and equipment and fuel storage tanks.</li> <li>» Accidental spills of hazardous chemicals.</li> <li>» Polluted water from wash bays and workshops.</li> <li>» Pollution from concrete mixing.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To ensure that the storage and handling of chemicals and hydrocarbons on-site does not cause pollution to the environment or harm to persons.</li> <li>» To ensure that the storage and maintenance of machinery on-site does not cause pollution of the environment or harm to persons.</li> <li>» Prevent and contain hydrocarbon leaks.</li> <li>» Undertake proper waste management.</li> <li>» Store hazardous chemicals safely in a bunded area.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/Control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Implement an emergency preparedness plan during the construction phase.	Contractor	Construction
Any liquids stored on site, including fuels and lubricants, must be stored in accordance with applicable legislation.	Contractor	Construction
Spill kits must be made available on-site for the clean-up of spills and leaks of contaminants. These must be maintained regularly.	Contractor	Construction
Losses of fuel and lubricants from the oil sumps and steering racks of vehicles and equipment must be contained using a drip tray with plastic sheeting filled with absorbent material when not parked on hard standing.	Contractor	Construction
Establish an appropriate Hazardous Stores and fuel storage area which is in accordance with the Hazardous Substance Amendment Act, No. 53 of 1992. This must include but not be limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Designated area;</li> <li>» All applicable safety signage;</li> <li>» Firefighting equipment;</li> <li>» Enclosed by an impermeable bund as per the requirements of the relevant standards and any relevant by-laws;</li> </ul>	Contractor	Construction



Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Protected from the elements,</li> <li>» Lockable;</li> <li>» Ventilated; and</li> <li>» Has adequate capacity to contain 110% of the largest container contents.</li> </ul>		
The storage of flammable and combustible liquids such as oils must be stored in compliance with Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) files.	Contractor	Construction
Corrective action must be undertaken immediately if a complaint is made, or potential/actual leak or spill of polluting substance identified. This includes stopping the contaminant from further escaping, cleaning up the affected environment as much as practically possible and implementing preventive measures. Where required, a NEMA Section 30 report must be submitted to DFFE within 14 days of the incident.	Contractor	Construction
In the event of a major spill or leak of contaminants, the relevant administering authority must be immediately notified as per the notification of emergencies/incidents.	Contractor	Construction
Spilled concrete must be cleaned up as soon as possible and disposed of at a suitably licensed waste disposal site.	Contractor	Construction
Accidental spillage of potentially contaminating liquids and solids must be cleaned up immediately in line with procedures by trained staff with the appropriate equipment.	Contractor	Construction
Any contaminated/polluted soil removed from the site must be disposed of at a licensed hazardous waste disposal facility.	Contractor	Construction
All machinery and equipment must be inspected regularly for faults and possible leaks,	Contractor	Construction
Routine servicing and maintenance of vehicles must not to take place on-site (except for emergencies). If repairs of vehicles must take place, an appropriate drip tray must be used to contain any fuel or oils.	Contractor	Construction
Construction machinery must be stored in an appropriately sealed area.	Contractor	Construction
Any storage and disposal permits/approvals which may be required must be obtained, and the conditions attached to such permits and approvals will be complied with.	Contractor	Construction
Transport of all hazardous substances must be in accordance with the relevant legislation and regulations.	Contractor	Construction
The sediment control and water quality structures used on-site must be monitored and maintained in an operational state at all times.	Contractor	Construction
An effective monitoring system must be put in place to detect any leakage or spillage of all hazardous substances during their transportation, handling, installation and storage.	Contractor	Construction
Precautions must be in place to limit the possibility of oil and other toxic liquids from entering the soil or clean stormwater system.	Contractor	Construction

Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
As much material must be pre-fabricated and then transported to site to avoid the risks of contamination associated with mixing, pouring and the storage of chemicals and compounds on site.	Contractor	Construction
Have appropriate action plans on site, and training for contractors and employees in the event of spills, leaks and other potential impacts to the aquatic systems. All waste generated on-site during construction must be adequately managed.	Contractor	Construction
Minimise fuels and chemicals stored on site.	Contractor	Construction
Implement a contingency plan to handle spills, so that environmental damage is avoided.	Contractor	Construction
Drip trays must be used during all fuel/chemical dispensing and beneath standing machinery/plant.	Contractor	Construction
In the case of petrochemical spillages, the spill must be collected immediately and stored in a designated area until it can be disposed of in accordance with the Hazardous Chemical Substances Regulations, 1995 (Regulation 15).	Contractor	Construction
Re-applied topsoil needs to be re-vegetated as soon as possible.	Contractor	Construction
Ensure battery transport and installation by accredited staff / contractors.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» No chemical spills outside of designated storage areas.</li> <li>» No water or soil contamination by spills.</li> <li>» Safe storage of hazardous chemicals.</li> <li>» Proper waste management.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Observation and supervision of chemical storage and handling practices and vehicle maintenance throughout construction phase.</li> <li>» A complaints register must be maintained, in which any complaints from the community will be logged.</li> <li>» An incident reporting system must be used to record non-conformances to the EMP.</li> <li>» On-going visual assessment to detect polluted areas and the application of clean-up and preventative procedures.</li> <li>» Monitor hydrocarbon spills from vehicles and machinery during construction continuously and record volume and nature of spill, location and clean-up actions.</li> <li>» Monitor maintenance of drains and intercept drains weekly.</li> <li>» Analyse soil samples for pollution in areas of known spills or where a breach of containment is evident when it occurs.</li> <li>» Records of accidental spills and clean-up procedures and the results thereof must be audited on an annual basis by the ECO.</li> <li>» Records of all incidents that caused chemical pollution must be kept and a summary of the results must be reported to management annually.</li> </ul>

#### **OBJECTIVE 14: Traffic management and transportation of equipment and materials to site**

The construction and decommissioning phases of the project will be the most significant in terms of traffic impacts resulting from the transport of equipment (including solar components) and materials and

construction crews to the site and the return of the vehicles after delivery of materials. Potential impacts associated with transportation and access relate mostly to works within the site boundary (i.e. the solar facility and ancillary infrastructure) and the external road network. This section should be read in conjunction with the Traffic and Transportation Plan attached as **Appendix F**.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Traffic congestion, particularly on narrow roads or on road passes where overtaking is not permitted.</li> <li>» Risk of accidents.</li> <li>» Deterioration of road pavement conditions (i.e. both surfaced and gravel road) due to abnormal loads.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Construction vehicle movement.</li> <li>» Speeding on local roads.</li> <li>» Degradation of local road conditions.</li> <li>» Site preparation and earthworks.</li> <li>» Foundations or plant equipment installation.</li> <li>» Mobile construction equipment movement on-site.</li> <li>» Substation construction activities.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Minimise impact of traffic associated with the construction of the solar facility on the local traffic volume, existing infrastructure, property owners, animals, and road users.</li> <li>» To minimise the potential for negative interaction between pedestrians or sensitive users and traffic associated with the solar facility construction.</li> <li>» To ensure all vehicles are roadworthy and all materials/equipment are transported appropriately and within any imposed permit/licence conditions.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Develop and implement a detailed method statement for the implementation of the traffic and transportation management plan (refer to <b>Appendix F</b> ).	Contractor(s), (Transportation sub-contractor)	Construction
Heavy vehicles travelling on secondary roads should adhere to low-speed limits to minimise noise and dust pollution.	Contractor(s), (Transportation sub-contractor)	Construction
Provide public transportation service for workers in order to reduce congestion on roads.	Contractor	Construction
Partner with local municipalities and other prominent users of the local roads to upgrade them to meet the required capacity and intensity of the vehicles related to the planned construction activities.	Contractor	Construction
Transportation contractors must adhere to the road rules and regulations.	Contractor	Construction
A designated access (or accesses) to the proposed site must be created to ensure safe entry and exit.	Contractor	Construction
Utilise only designated access routes & entrance/exits from the site.	Contractor	Construction
Implement appropriate signage & road safety measures at entrance/exit to the site and on site.	Contractor	Construction

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
The delivery of solar components to the site must be staggered and trips must be scheduled to occur outside of peak traffic periods.	Contractor	Construction
Reduce the construction period.	Contractor	Construction
The use of mobile batching plants and quarries in close proximity to the site must be considered as this would decrease the impact on the surrounding road network.	Contractor	Construction
Regular maintenance of gravel roads by the Contractor during the construction and decommissioning phases.	Contractor	Construction
It is recommended to avoid staggered intersections on the main access road. Intersections should rather be consolidated or realigned as far as possible.	Contractor	Construction
Dust suppression of gravel roads during the construction and decommissioning phases, as required.	Contractor	Construction
Staff and general trips should occur outside of peak traffic periods as far as possible.	Contractor	Construction
Any low hanging overhead lines (lower than 5.1 m) e.g., Eskom and Telkom lines, along the proposed routes will have to be moved to accommodate the abnormal load vehicles.	Contractor	Construction
The internal gravel roads will require grading with a road grader to obtain a flat even surface and the geometric design of these gravel roads needs to be confirmed at detailed design stage. This process is to be undertaken by a civil engineering consultant or a geometric design professional. The road designer should take cognizance that roads need to be designed with smooth, relatively flat gradients to allow an abnormal load vehicle to ascend to the top of a hill.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» No traffic incidents involving project personnel or appointed contractors.</li> <li>» Appropriate signage in place.</li> <li>» No complaints resulting from traffic congestion, delays or driver negligence associated with construction of the solar facility.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Visual monitoring of traffic control measures to ensure they are effective.</li> <li>» A complaints register will be maintained, in which any complaints from the community will be logged. Complaints will be investigated and, if appropriate, acted upon.</li> <li>» An incident reporting system will be used to record non-conformances to the EMP.</li> </ul>

### **OBJECTIVE 15: Ensure appropriate rehabilitation of disturbed areas such that residual environmental impacts are remediated or curtailed**

Areas requiring rehabilitation will include all areas disturbed during the construction phase and that are not required for regular operation and maintenance operations. Rehabilitation should be undertaken in an area as soon as possible after the completion of construction activities within that area.

<b>Project component/s</b>	» PV arrays;
----------------------------	--------------

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Environmental integrity of the site undermined resulting in reduced visual aesthetics, erosion, compromised land capability and the requirement for on-going management intervention.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Site preparation and earthworks.</li> <li>» Excavation of foundations and trenches.</li> <li>» Temporary laydown areas.</li> <li>» Temporary access roads/tracks.</li> <li>» Other disturbed areas/footprints.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To ensure and encourage site rehabilitation of disturbed areas.</li> <li>» To ensure that the site is appropriately rehabilitated following the execution of the works, such that residual environmental impacts (including erosion) are remediated or curtailed.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
A site rehabilitation programme should be compiled and implemented (refer to <b>Appendix D</b> ).	EPC Contractor in consultation with Specialist	Construction
Following construction, rehabilitation of all areas disturbed (e.g. temporary access tracks and laydown areas) must be undertaken.	Contractor	Rehabilitation
Any areas disturbed during the construction phase should be encouraged to rehabilitate as fast and effective as possible and were deemed necessary by the ECO or Contractor's EO, artificial rehabilitation (e.g. re-seeding with collected or commercial indigenous seed mixes) should be applied in order to speed up the rehabilitation process in critical areas (e.g. steep slopes and unstable soils).	Contractor	Rehabilitation
Rehabilitation of the working areas must be concurrent with the construction of the project.	Contractor	Construction
Closure and rehabilitation of the disturbed areas should commence as soon as the laying of underground cable has been completed.	Contractor	Construction
If natural re-vegetation is unsuccessful, seeding and planting of the area will need to be implemented	Contractor	Rehabilitation
All temporary facilities, equipment and waste materials must be removed from site and appropriately disposed of.	Contractor	Rehabilitation
Necessary drainage works and anti-erosion measures must be installed, where required, to minimise loss of topsoil and control erosion.	Contractor	Rehabilitation
Re-vegetated areas may have to be protected from wind erosion and maintained until an acceptable plant cover has been achieved.	Contractor	Rehabilitation
On-going alien plant monitoring and removal should be undertaken on all areas of natural vegetation on an annual basis.	Contractor	Construction

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» All portions of site, including construction camp and working areas, cleared of equipment and temporary facilities.</li> <li>» Topsoil replaced on all areas and stabilised.</li> <li>» Disturbed areas rehabilitated and acceptable plant cover achieved on rehabilitated sites.</li> <li>» Closed site free of erosion and alien invasive plants.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» On-going inspection of rehabilitated areas in order to determine the effectiveness of the rehabilitation measures implemented during the operational lifespan of the solar facility.</li> <li>» On-going alien plant monitoring and removal should be undertaken on an annual basis.</li> <li>» An incident reporting system must be used to record non-conformances to the EMP.</li> </ul>

## 7.2. Detailing Method Statements

**OBJECTIVE 16: Ensure all construction activities are undertaken with the appropriate level of environmental awareness to minimise environmental risk**

The environmental specifications are required to be underpinned by a series of Method Statements, within which the Contractors and Service Providers are required to outline how any identified environmental risks will practically be mitigated and managed for the duration of the contract, and how specifications within this EMP will be met. That is, the Contractor will be required to describe how specified requirements will be achieved through the submission of written Method Statements to the Site Manager and ECO.

A Method Statement is defined as "a written submission by the Contractor in response to the environmental specification or a request by the Site Manager, setting out the plant, materials, labour and method the Contractor proposes using to conduct an activity, in such detail that the Site Manager is able to assess whether the Contractor's proposal is in accordance with the Specifications and/or will produce results in accordance with the Specifications". The Method Statement must cover applicable details with regard to:

- » Details of the responsible person/s
- » Construction procedures
- » Materials and equipment to be used
- » Getting the equipment to and from site
- » How the equipment/material will be moved while on-site
- » How and where material will be stored
- » The containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur
- » Timing and location of activities
- » Compliance/non-compliance with the Specifications
- » Any other information deemed necessary by the Site Manager

Method Statements must be compiled for all activities which affect any aspect of the environment and should be applied consistently to all activities. Specific areas to be addressed in the method statement: pre, during and post construction include:



- » Site establishment (which explains all activities from induction training to offloading, construction sequence for site establishment and the different amenities and to be established etc., including a site camp plan indicating all of these).
- » Preparation of the site (i.e. clearing vegetation, compacting soils and removing existing infrastructure and waste).
- » Soil management/stockpiling and erosion control.
- » Excavations and backfilling procedure.
- » Stipulate norms and standards for water supply and usage (i.e. comply strictly to licence and legislation requirements and restrictions).
- » Stipulate the stormwater management procedures recommended in the stormwater management method statement.
- » Ablution facilities (placement, maintenance, management and servicing).
- » Solid Waste Management:
  - \* Description of the waste storage facilities (on site and accumulative).
  - \* Placement of waste stored (on site and accumulative).
  - \* Management and collection of the waste process.
  - \* Recycle, re-use and removal process and procedure.
- » Liquid waste management:
  - \* Design, establish, maintain and operate suitable pollution control facilities necessary to prevent discharge of water containing polluting matter or visible suspended materials into rivers, streams or existing drainage systems.
  - \* Should grey water (i.e. water from basins, showers, baths, kitchen sinks etc.) need to be disposed of, link into existing facilities or sewerage systems where possible. Where no facilities are available, grey water runoff must be controlled to ensure there is no unacceptable seepage occurs.
- » Dust and noise pollution:
  - \* Describe the necessary measures to ensure that noise from construction activities is maintained within lawfully acceptable levels.
  - \* Procedure to control dust at all times on the site, access roads, borrow pits and spoil sites (dust control shall be sufficient so as not to have significant impacts in terms of the biophysical and social environments). These impacts include visual pollution, decreased safety due to reduced visibility, negative effects on human health and the ecology due to dust particle accumulation.
- » Hazardous substance storage (ensure compliance with all national, regional and local legislation with regard to the storage of oils, fuels, lubricants, solvents, wood treatments, bitumen, cement, pesticides and any other harmful and hazardous substances and materials. South African National Standards apply):
  - \* Lists of all potentially hazardous substances to be used.
  - \* Appropriate handling, storage and disposal procedures.
  - \* Prevention protocol of accidental contamination of soil at the storage and handling areas.
  - \* All storage areas, (i.e. for harmful substances appropriately bunded with a suitable collection point for accidental spills must be implemented and drip trays underneath dispensing mechanisms including leaking engines/machinery).
- » Fire prevention and management measures on site.
- » Fauna and flora protection process on and off site (i.e. removal to reintroduction or replanting, if necessary):
  - \* Rehabilitation, re-vegetation process and bush clearing.
- » Incident and accident reporting protocol.
- » General administration.

- » Designate access road and the protocol for when roads are in use.
- » Requirements on gate control protocols.

The Contractor may not commence with the activity covered by the Method Statement until it has been reviewed by the Site Manager, except in the case of emergency activities and then only with the consent of the Site Manager. Approval of the Method Statement will not absolve the Contractor from their obligations or responsibilities in terms of their contract.

Failure to submit a method statement may result in suspension of the activity concerned until such time as a method statement has been submitted and approved.

### **7.3. Awareness and Competence: Construction Phase of Mutsho Solar PV4**

**OBJECTIVE 17: To ensure all construction personnel have the appropriate level of environmental awareness and competence to ensure continued environmental due diligence and on-going minimisation of environmental harm**

To achieve effective environmental management, it is important that Contractors are aware of the responsibilities in terms of the relevant environmental legislation and the contents of this EMPr. The Contractor is responsible for informing employees and sub-contractors of their environmental obligations in terms of the environmental specifications, and for ensuring that employees are adequately experienced and properly trained in order to execute the works in a manner that will minimise environmental impacts. The Contractors obligations in this regard include the following:

- » All employees must have a basic understanding of the key environmental features of the construction site and the surrounding environment. This includes the discussion/explanation of site environmental matters during toolbox talks.
- » The content and requirements of Method Statements are to be clearly explained to all plant operators and general workers. All staff acting in a supervisory capacity is to have copies of the relevant Method Statements and be aware of the content thereof.
- » Ensuring that a copy of the EMPr is readily available on-site, and that all senior site staff is aware of the location and have access to the document. Senior site staff will be familiar with the requirements of the EMPr and the environmental specifications as they apply to the construction of the solar facility.
- » Ensuring that, prior to commencing any site works, all employees and sub-contractors have attended an Environmental Awareness Training session. The training session must provide the site staff with an appreciation of the project's environmental requirements, and how they are to be implemented.
  - \* Records must be kept of those that have completed the relevant training.
  - \* Training should be done either in a written or verbal format but must be appropriate for the receiving audience.
  - \* Refresher sessions must be held to ensure the contractor staff are aware of their environmental obligations as practically possible.
- » All sub-contractors must have a copy of the EMPr and sign a declaration/ acknowledgement that they are aware and familiar with the contents and requirements of the EMPr and that they will conduct work in such a manner as to ensure compliance with the requirements of the EMPr.

- » Contractors and main sub-contractors should have basic training in the identification of archaeological sites/objects, and protected flora and fauna that may be encountered on the site.
- » Awareness of any other environmental matters, which are deemed to be necessary by the ECO.
- » Ensuring that employee information posters, outlining the environmental "do's" and "don'ts" (as per the environmental awareness training course) are erected at prominent locations throughout the site.

Therefore, prior to the commencement of construction activities on site and before any person commences with work on site thereafter, adequate environmental awareness and responsibility are to be appropriately presented to all staff present on-site, clearly describing their obligations towards environmental controls and methodologies in terms of this EMPr. This training and awareness will be achieved in the following ways:

### **7.3.1 Environmental Awareness Training**

Environmental Awareness Training must be undertaken by the EPC Contractor and must take the form of an on-site talk and demonstration by the EO before the commencement of site establishment and construction on site. The education/awareness programme should be aimed at all levels of management and construction workers within the contractor team. A record of attendance of this training must be maintained by the SHE Officer on site.

### **7.3.2 Induction Training**

Environmental induction training must be presented to all persons who are to work on the site – be it for short or long durations; Contractor's or Engineer's staff; administrative or site staff; sub-contractors or visitors to site.

This induction training should be undertaken by the Contractor's EO and should include discussing the developer's environmental policy and values, the function of the EMPr and Contract Specifications and the importance and reasons for compliance to these. The induction training must highlight the overall "do's" and "don'ts" on site and clarify the repercussions of not complying with these. The non-conformance reporting system must be explained during the induction as well. Opportunity for questions and clarifications must form part of this training. A record of attendance of this training must be maintained by the SHE Officer on site.

### **7.3.3 Toolbox Talks**

Toolbox talks should be held on a scheduled and regular basis (at least once a week) where foremen, environmental and safety representatives of different components of the works and sub-consultants hold talks relating to environmental practices and safety awareness on site. These talks should also include discussions on possible common incidents occurring on site and the prevention of the reoccurrence thereof. Records of attendance and the awareness talk subject must be kept on file.

## **7.4. Monitoring Programme: Construction Phase of Mutsho Solar PV4**

### **OBJECTIVE 18: To monitor the performance of the control strategies employed against environmental objectives and standards**

A monitoring programme must be in place not only to ensure conformance with the EMP, but also to monitor any environmental issues and impacts which have not been accounted for in the EMP that are, or could result in significant environmental impacts for which corrective action is required. Monitoring during construction must be on-going for the duration of this phase. The Project Manager must ensure that the monitoring is conducted and reported.

The aim of the monitoring and auditing process will be to monitor the implementation of the specified environmental specifications, in order to:

- » Monitor and audit compliance with the prescriptive and procedural terms of the environmental specifications
- » Ensure adequate and appropriate interventions to address non-compliance
- » Ensure adequate and appropriate interventions to address environmental degradation
- » Provide a mechanism for the lodging and resolution of public complaints
- » Ensure appropriate and adequate record keeping related to environmental compliance
- » Determine the effectiveness of the environmental specifications and recommend the requisite changes and updates based on audit outcomes, in order to enhance the efficacy of environmental management on site
- » Aid in communication and feedback to authorities and stakeholders

All documentation e.g. audit/monitoring/compliance reports and notifications, required to be submitted to the DFFE in terms of the Environmental Authorisation, must be submitted to the Director: Compliance Monitoring of the Department.

Records relating to monitoring and auditing must be kept on site and made available for inspection to any relevant and competent authority in respect of this development.

#### **7.4.1. Non-Conformance Reports**

All supervisory staff including Foremen, Resident Engineers, and the ECO must be provided with the means to be able to submit non-conformance reports to the Site Manager. Non-conformance reports will describe, in detail, the cause, nature and effects of any environmental non-conformance by the Contractor. Records of penalties imposed may be required by the relevant authority within 48 (forty eight) hours.

The non-conformance report will be updated on completion of the corrective measures indicated on the finding sheet. The report must indicate that the remediation measures have been implemented timeously and that the non-conformance can be closed-out to the satisfaction of the Site Manager and ECO.

#### **7.4.2. Incident Reports**

According to Section 30 of National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), an "Incident" is defined as an unexpected sudden occurrence, including a major emission, fire or explosion leading to serious danger to the public or potentially serious pollution of or detriment to the environment, whether immediate or delayed.

In terms of the requirements of NEMA, the responsible person must, within 14 days of the incident, report to the Director General, provincial head of department and municipality such information as is available to enable an initial evaluation of the incident, including:

- (a) the nature of the incident;
- (b) the substances involved and an estimation of the quantity released and their possible acute effect on persons and the environment and data needed to assess these effects;
- (c) initial measures taken to minimise impacts;
- (d) causes of the incident, whether direct or indirect, including equipment, technology, system, or management failure; and
- (e) measures taken and to be taken to avoid a recurrence of such incident.

#### **7.4.3. Monitoring Reports**

A monitoring report will be compiled by the ECO on a monthly basis (or as dictated by the conditions of the EA) and must be submitted to the Director: Compliance Monitoring at DEA for their records. This report should include details of the activities undertaken in the reporting period, any non-conformances or incidents recorded, corrective action required, and details of those non-conformances or incidents which have been closed out, or any other aspect as per the Appendix 7 of the EIA Regulations (2014, as amended 2017). The EPC contractor must ensure that all waste manifests are provided to the ECO on a monthly basis in order to inform and update the DEA regarding waste related activities.

#### **7.4.4. Audit Report**

The Developer must ensure that project compliance with the conditions of the Environmental Authorisation is audited by an independent auditor, and that the audit reports are submitted to the Director: Compliance Monitoring at the DEA at intervals as dictated by the conditions of the EA. Such audits must be undertaken during both the construction and operation phases of the solar facility. The effectiveness of the mitigation measures and recommendations for amongst others the following: grievance incidents; waste management, alien and open space management, re-vegetation and rehabilitation, plant rescue and protection and traffic and transportation should be audited. The results must form part of the project monitoring and audit reports.

#### **7.4.5. Final Audit Report**

A final environmental audit report must be compiled by an independent external auditor and be submitted to DFFE upon completion of the construction and rehabilitation activities (within 30 days of completion of the construction phase. This report must indicate the date of the audit, the name of the auditor and the outcome of the audit in terms of compliance with the environmental authorisation conditions and the requirements of the EMP.

## CHAPTER 8: MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME: OPERATION

**Overall Goal:** To ensure that the operation of the solar facility does not have unforeseen impacts on the environment and to ensure that all impacts are monitored and the necessary corrective action taken in all cases. In order to address this goal, it is necessary to operate Mutsho Solar PV4 in a way that:

- » Ensures that operation activities are properly managed in respect of environmental aspects and impacts.
- » Enables the solar facility operation activities to be undertaken without significant disruption to other land uses in the area, in particular with regard to farming practices, traffic and road use, and effects on local residents.
- » Minimises impacts on fauna using the site.

An environmental manager must be appointed during operation whose duty will be to ensure the implementation of the operational EMP.

### 8.1. Objectives

In order to meet this goal, the following objectives have been identified, together with necessary actions and monitoring requirements.

#### **OBJECTIVE 1: Securing the site and general maintenance during operation**

Safety issues may arise with public access to solar panels (e.g. unauthorised entry to the site) or to the solar facility substation. Prevention and control measures to manage public access are therefore important.

General maintenance at Mutsho Solar PV4 will be required during the operation of solar facility. The maintenance required may also include the replacement of solar panels, if required during the operation lifetime of the facility.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	» Hazards to landowners and public.
<b>Activities/risk sources</b>	» Uncontrolled access to the solar facility and associated infrastructure.
<b>Mitigation:</b>	» To secure the site against unauthorised entry.
<b>Target/Objective</b>	» To protect members of the public/landowners/residents.

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
General onsite maintenance of the solar panels during the operation phase must in no way impact or negatively affect the environment, and contractors or other service providers	O&M Operator	Operation phase



Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
providing onsite maintenance must be made aware of this EMPr and the content thereof.		
Secure access to the site and entrances.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Post information boards about public safety hazards and emergency contact information.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Should solar panels be required to be replaced, the following will apply: » Site access must be confirmed for the transportation of the required solar components and equipment to the site and location of the infrastructure to be replaced. » Materials and solar structures are to be stored within the previously disturbed construction laydown area. No disturbance of areas outside of these areas should occur. » Full clean-up of all materials must be undertaken after the removal and replacement of the solar panels and associated infrastructure is complete, and disturbed areas appropriately rehabilitated. » Most of the materials used for solar panels can be recycled. The majority of the solar panels can be recovered and re-used or recycled. Recyclable materials must be transported off-site by truck and managed at appropriate facilities in accordance with relevant waste management regulations. No waste materials may be left on-site following the replacement. » Waste material which cannot be recycled shall be disposed of at an appropriately licensed waste disposal site or as required by the relevant legislation.	O&M Operator	Operation phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	» Site is secure and there is no unauthorised entry. » No members of the public/ landowners injured. » No complaints from landowners/ public.
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	» Regular visual inspection of fence for signs of deterioration/forced access. » An incident reporting system must be used to record non-conformances to the EMPr. » A public complaints register must be developed and maintained on site. » Landowners should be consulted regularly.

## **OBJECTIVE 2: Protection of indigenous natural vegetation, fauna and maintenance of rehabilitation**

Indirect impacts on vegetation and terrestrial fauna during operation could result from maintenance activities and the movement of people and vehicles on site. In order to ensure the long-term environmental integrity of the site following the construction, maintenance of the areas rehabilitated post-construction must be undertaken until these areas have successfully re-established.

<b>Project component/s</b>	» PV arrays; » Substation;
----------------------------	-------------------------------

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Disturbance to or loss of vegetation and/or habitat.</li> <li>» Alien plant invasion.</li> <li>» Environmental integrity of site undermined resulting in reduced visual aesthetics, erosion, compromised land capability and the requirement for on-going management intervention.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/Risk Source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Movement of employee vehicles within and around site.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Maintain minimised footprints of disturbance of vegetation/ habitats on-site.</li> <li>» Ensure and encourage plant regrowth in non-operational areas of post-construction rehabilitation.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/Control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Any potentially dangerous fauna such as snakes or fauna threatened by the maintenance and operational activities should be removed to a safe location.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
The collection, hunting or harvesting of any plants or animals at the site should be strictly forbidden by anyone except landowners or other individuals with the appropriate permits and permissions where required.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
If any parts of the site need to be lit at night for security purposes, this should be done with downward-directed low-UV type lights (such as most LEDs) as far as possible, which do not attract insects.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
All vehicles accessing the site should adhere to a low-speed limit (30km/h max) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
All roads and other hardened surfaces should have runoff control features which redirect water flow and dissipate any energy in the water which may pose an erosion risk.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Regular monitoring for erosion after construction to ensure that no erosion problems have developed as result of the disturbance must be undertaken, as per the Erosion Management and Rehabilitation Plans for the project.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
All erosion problems observed must be rectified as soon as possible, using the appropriate erosion control structures and revegetation techniques.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Due to the disturbance at the site as well as the increased runoff generated by the hard infrastructure, alien plant species are likely to be a long-term problem at the site and a long-term control plan will need to be implemented. Problem plant species are already present in the area and are likely to increase rapidly if not controlled.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Regular monitoring for alien plants within the development footprint as well as adjacent areas which receive runoff from the facility must be undertaken as these are also likely to be prone to invasion problems.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
When alien plants are detected, these must be controlled and cleared using the recommended control measures for each	O&M Operator	Operation phase

Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
species to ensure that the problem is not exacerbated or does not re-occur and increase to problematic levels. Clearing methods must aim to keep disturbance to a minimum. The use of herbicides should be avoided as far as possible.		
No planting or importing any listed invasive alien plant species (all Category 1a, 1b and 2 invasive species) to the site for landscaping, rehabilitation or any other purpose must be undertaken.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Vehicle movements must be restricted to designated roadways.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
In order to increase general faunal protection, the use of any pesticide in the solar facility area should be prohibited.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Existing roads must be maintained to ensure limited erosion and impact on areas adjacent to roadways.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Vegetation control within the solar facility should be by manual clearing and herbicides should not be used except to control alien plants in the prescribed manner if necessary.	O&M Operator Specialist	Operation phase
All alien plant re-growth must be monitored and should these alien plants reoccur these plants should be re-eradicated. The scale of the development does however not warrant the use of a Landscape Architect and / or Landscape Contractor.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
The use of herbicides and other related horticultural chemicals should be carefully controlled and only applied by personnel adequately certified to apply pesticides and herbicides. It must be ensured that WHO Recommended Classification of Pesticides by Hazard Class 1a (extremely hazardous) or 1b (highly hazardous) are not purchased, stored or used on site along with any other nationally or internationally similarly restricted/banned products.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Implement an animal removal plan to ensure safety of workers and fauna.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Fire breaks should be established, where appropriate and as discussed with the landowners. Access roads could also act as fire breaks.	O&M Operator Specialist	Duration of contract
There should be follow-up rehabilitation and revegetation of any remaining bare areas with indigenous perennial shrubs and succulents from the local area.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Annual site inspection for erosion with follow up remedial action where problems are identified.	Specialist	Annual monitoring until successful re-establishment of vegetation in an area
Noise and disturbance on the site should be kept to a minimum during operation and maintenance activities.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
The area must be demarcated, and no disturbance is to be allowed outside the direct development footprint.	O&M Operator	Operation phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» No further disturbance to vegetation or terrestrial faunal habitats.</li> <li>» No erosion problems resulting from operational activities within the solar facility.</li> <li>» Low abundance of alien plants within affected areas.</li> <li>» Maintenance of a ground cover that resist erosion.</li> </ul>
------------------------------	--

	» Continued improvement of rehabilitation efforts.
<b>Monitoring</b>	» Observation of vegetation on-site by environmental manager. » Regular inspections to monitor plant regrowth/performance of rehabilitation efforts and weed infestation compared to natural/undisturbed areas. » Annual monitoring with records of alien species presence and clearing actions. » Annual monitoring with records of erosion problems and mitigation actions taken with photographs.

### OBJECTIVE 3: Protection of avifauna

<b>Project component/s</b>	» PV arrays; » Substation; » Access roads; and » Associated infrastructure.
<b>Potential Impact</b>	» Disturbance to or loss of birds as a result of collision with project components. » Destruction of habitat. » Displacement of birds. » Electrocution on substation. » Traffic to and from site.
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	» Maintenance activities. » Substation operation.
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	» More accurately determine the impact of the operating solar facility on collision-prone Red Data species. » Minimise impacts associated with the solar panels and the substation.

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
If one or more avifaunal SCC carcasses are located and determined likely to have resulted from collisions with infrastructure in any sensitivity area over the lifespan of the facility the fatality is to be appropriately recorded and reported to an avifaunal specialist to determine the most appropriate action.	Developer Specialist	Operation phase
If double layers of fencing are required for security purposes they should be positioned at least 2 m apart to reduce the probability of entrapment by larger bodied species that may find themselves between the two fences.	Developer Specialist	Operation phase
Develop and implement a carcass search and bird activity monitoring programme in-line with the latest applicable guidelines.	Developer Specialist	Operation phase
Regular reviews of operational phase monitoring data (activity and carcass) and results to be conducted by an avifaunal specialist. These reviews should strive to identify sensitive locations and areas of increased collisions that may require additional mitigation.	Developer Specialist	Operation phase
An operational monitoring programme for any novel overhead power lines must be implemented to locate potential collision fatalities.	Developer Specialist	Operation phase

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Any fatalities located should be reported to Birdlife South Africa (BLSA) and the Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT).	Developer Specialist	Operation phase
Prevent birds from nesting in substation infrastructure through exclusion covers or spikes if required (determined on a case-by-case basis).	Developer Specialist	Operation phase
Rehabilitation of the disturbed areas existing in the project area must be made a priority. Topsoil must also be utilised, and any disturbed area must be re-vegetated with plant and grass species which are endemic to this vegetation type.	Contractor EO	Operational/Closure Phase
Environmentally friendly dust suppressants need to be utilised	Contractor EO	Operation phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Minimal additional disturbance to bird populations on the solar facility site.</li> <li>» Continued improvement of bird protection devices, as informed by the operational monitoring.</li> <li>» Regular provision of clearly worded, logical and objective information on the interface between the local avifauna and operating solar facility.</li> <li>» Clear and logical recommendations on why, how and when to institute mitigation measures to reduce avian impacts of the development, from the pre-construction to operation phase.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Observation of avifaunal populations and incidence of injuries/death from collisions from solar and substation infrastructure.</li> <li>» Monitoring of facility and reporting where fatalities do occur.</li> <li>» Review of bird monitoring report on a full year of post-construction monitoring.</li> </ul>

## OBJECTIVE 5: Minimisation of visual impact

The mitigation of secondary visual impacts, such as security and functional lighting, construction activities, etc. may be possible and should be implemented and maintained on an on-going basis.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Enhanced visual intrusion.</li> <li>» Visual impact of the solar facility degradation (including operational solar panels) and vegetation rehabilitation failure.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Associated lighting.</li> <li>» Solar panels and other infrastructure.</li> <li>» Access roads.</li> <li>» Other associated infrastructure.</li> <li>» Viewing of the degradation and vegetation rehabilitation failure by observers on or near the site.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To minimise the potential for visual impact.</li> <li>» Well maintained and neat facility.</li> </ul>

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Maintain the general appearance of the facility as a whole, including the solar panels and associated infrastructure.	O&M Operator	Operation and maintenance
Should glare prove problematic which is more likely with a tracking system, the trackers need to be programmed to prevent early morning reflection towards the roads.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Use low key lighting around buildings and operational areas that is triggered only when people are present.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Plan to utilise infra-red security systems or motion sensor triggered security lighting.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Ensure that lighting is focused on the development with no light spillage outside the site.	O&M Operator	Operation phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	» Well maintained and neat facility with intact vegetation on and in the vicinity of the solar facility.
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	» Monitoring of the entire site on an ongoing basis by the operator.

#### **OBJECTIVE 6: Ensure appropriate operation and maintenance of the battery energy storage system**

<b>Project Component/s</b>	» Battery Energy Storage System.
<b>Potential Impact</b>	» Fire and safety risks » Leakages and impacts on soils and water resources.
<b>Activities/Risk Sources</b>	» Inappropriate operation and maintenance of BESS.
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	» To avoid and or minimise the potential risk of associated with the operation and maintenance of the BESS.

Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Compile (and adhere to) a procedure for the safe handling of battery cells	O&M Contractor	Operation
Ensure that battery supplier user guides, safety specifications and MSDS are filed on site at all times.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Operate, maintain and monitor the BESS as per supplier specifications.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Compile method statements for approval by the Technical/SHEQ Manager for battery cell, electrolyte and battery cell/ container replacement. Maintain method statements on site.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Compile an emergency response plan for implementation in the event of a spill or leakage.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Batteries must be strictly maintained by the supplier or suitably qualified persons for the duration of the project life cycle. No unauthorised personnel should be allowed to maintain the BESS.	O&M Contractor	Operation

Mitigation: Action/Control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Ensure that all maintenance contractors/ staff are familiar with the supplier's specifications.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Provide signage on site specifying the types of batteries in use and the risk of exposure to hazardous material and electric shock.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Provide signage on site specifying how electrical and chemical fires must be dealt with by first responders, and the potential risks to first responders (e.g. toxic fumes). Provide suitable firefighting equipment on site.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Lithium-ion batteries must have battery management systems (containment, automatic alarms and shut-off systems) to monitor and protect cells from overcharging or damaging conditions.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Maintain strict access control to the battery storage area.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Undertake regular visual checks on BESS equipment to identify signs of damage or leaks.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Provide environmental awareness training to all personnel on site. Training must include discussion of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Potential impact of electrolyte spills on groundwater;</li> <li>Suitable disposal of waste and effluent;</li> <li>Key measures in the EMP relevant to worker's activities;</li> <li>How incidents and suggestions for improvement can be reported.</li> </ul> Ensure that all attendees remain for the duration of the training and on completion sign an attendance register that clearly indicates participants' names.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Spill kits must be made available to address any incidents associated with the flow of chemicals from the batteries into the surrounding environment.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Any spills must be cleaned up immediately and contaminated absorbents and materials or soil disposed of at a licensed hazardous waste disposal facility.	O&M Contractor	Operation

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» BESS operated and maintained in accordance with supplier specifications.</li> <li>» Appropriate signage on site.</li> <li>» Employees appropriately trained.</li> <li>» Required documentation available on site.</li> <li>» Firefighting equipment and training provided before the operation phase commences.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The O&amp;M contractor must monitor indicators listed above to ensure that they have been met.</li> </ul>



## OBJECTIVE 7: Appropriate management of stormwater and erosion control

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Erosion and soil loss.</li> <li>» Increased runoff.</li> <li>» Downstream sedimentation.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/risk sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Rainfall and wind erosion of disturbed areas.</li> <li>» Concentrated discharge of water from project site.</li> <li>» Stormwater run-off from sealed surfaces.</li> <li>» Roadside drainage ditches.</li> <li>» Project related infrastructure, such as buildings, solar panels and fences.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To minimise erosion of soil from site during operation.</li> <li>» To minimise damage to vegetation by erosion or deposition.</li> <li>» To retain all topsoil with a stable soil surface</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Any erosion problems observed along access roads or any hardened/engineered surface should be rectified immediately and monitored thereafter to ensure that they do not re-occur	O&M Operator	Operation phase
All bare areas (excluding agricultural land and the development footprint), affected by the development, should be re-vegetated with locally occurring species, to bind the soil and limit erosion potential where applicable.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Re-instate as much of the eroded area to its pre-disturbed, "natural" geometry (no change in elevation and any banks not to be steepened) where possible.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Roads and other disturbed areas should be regularly monitored for erosion problems and problem areas should receive follow-up monitoring by the EO to assess the success of the remediation.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Any stormwater within the site must be handled in a suitable manner as per the management measures in stormwater management plan.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Stormwater from hardstand areas, buildings and the substation must be managed using appropriate channels and swales when located within steep areas.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
No stormwater runoff must be allowed to discharge directly into the watercourses. The runoff should rather be dissipated over a broad area covered by natural vegetation or managed using appropriate channels and swales when located within steep embankments.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Stormwater run-off infrastructure must be maintained to mitigate both the flow and water quality impacts of any stormwater leaving the solar energy facility site.	O&M Operator	Operation phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Minimal level of soil erosion around site.</li> <li>» Minimal level of soil degradation.</li> <li>» No activity outside demarcated areas.</li> <li>» Progressive return of disturbed and rehabilitated areas to the desired end state.</li> <li>» No indications of visible topsoil loss.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Continual inspections of the site by the Environmental Manager/EO.</li> <li>» Reporting of ineffective sediment control systems and rectification as soon as possible.</li> <li>» If soil loss is suspected, acceleration of soil conservation and rehabilitation measures must be implemented.</li> </ul>

### **OBJECTIVE 8: Appropriate handling and management of hazardous substances and waste**

The operation of the facility will involve the generation of limited waste products, most significantly spent battery components which must be appropriately managed.

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» PV arrays;</li> <li>» Substation;</li> <li>» Access roads; and</li> <li>» Associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Inefficient use of resources resulting in excessive waste generation.</li> <li>» Litter or contamination of the site or water through poor waste management practices.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Transformers and switchgear – substation.</li> <li>» Fuel and oil storage.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» To comply with waste management legislation.</li> <li>» To minimise production of waste.</li> <li>» To ensure appropriate waste disposal.</li> <li>» To avoid environmental harm from waste disposal.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Hazardous substances must be stored in sealed containers within a clearly demarcated designated area.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Storage areas for hazardous substances must be conducted within a secured and clearly demarcated area.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
All structures and/or components replaced during maintenance activities must be appropriately disposed of at an appropriately licensed waste disposal site or sold to a recycling merchant for recycling.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Care must be taken to ensure that spillage of oils and other hazardous substances are limited during maintenance. Handling of these materials should take place within an appropriately sealed and bunded area. Should any accidental spillage take place, it must be cleaned up according to specified standards regarding bioremediation.	O&M Operator	Operation and maintenance

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Waste handling, collection and disposal operations must be managed and controlled by a waste management contractor.	O&M Operator / waste management contractor	Operation phase
Used oils and chemicals: » Where these cannot be recycled, appropriate disposal must be arranged with a licensed facility in consultation with the administering authority. » Waste must be stored and handled according to the relevant legislation and regulations.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
General waste must be recycled where possible or disposed of at an appropriately licensed landfill.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Spill kits must be made available on-site for the clean-up of spills and leaks of contaminants.	O&M Operator	Operation and maintenance
Hazardous waste (including hydrocarbons) and general waste must be stored and disposed of separately.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Disposal of waste must be in accordance with relevant legislative requirements, including the use of licensed contractors.	O&M Operator/ waste management contractor	Operation phase
No waste may be burned or buried on site.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Refuse bins must be emptied and secured.	O&M Operator/ waste management contractor	Operation phase
Maximum domestic waste storage period will be 7 days.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
A pest control plan must be put in place and implemented; it is imperative that poisons not be used.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
On-site battery maintenance should be done over appropriate sealed surfaces with appropriate containment measures and any hazardous substances must be disposed of appropriately	O&M Contractor	Operation

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» No complaints received regarding waste on site or dumping.</li> <li>» Internal site audits identifying that waste segregation, recycling and reuse is occurring appropriately.</li> <li>» Provision of all appropriate waste manifests.</li> <li>» No contamination of soil.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Waste collection must be monitored internally on a regular basis.</li> <li>» Waste documentation must be completed and made available for inspection on request.</li> <li>» An incidents/complaints register must be maintained, in which any complaints from the community must be logged. Complaints must be investigated and, if appropriate, acted upon.</li> <li>» Regular reports on exact quantities of all waste streams exiting the site must be compiled by the waste management contractor and monitored by the environmental manager. All appropriate waste disposal certificates must accompany the monthly reports.</li> </ul>

**OBJECTIVE 9: Maximise benefits and opportunities for local communities associated with the operation of the solar facility**

<b>Project component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Solar facility.</li> <li>» Day to day operational activities associated with the solar facility including maintenance.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The opportunities and benefits associated with the creation of local employment and business should be maximised as far as possible.</li> </ul>
<b>Activity/risk source</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The operation phase of the solar facility will create permanent employment opportunities.</li> <li>» The establishment of a solar facility has the potential to create an attraction for visitors to the area. The development also has the potential to promote the benefits of renewable energy projects.</li> </ul>
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Create medium- to long-term full time employment opportunities for locals.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
The project developer should make effort to use locally sourced inputs where feasible in order to maximize the benefit to the local economy.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Local Small and Medium Enterprises are to be approached to investigate the opportunities for supplying inputs required for the maintenance and operation of the facility, as far as feasible.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Where feasible, effort must be made to employ locally in order to create maximum benefit for the communities.	O&M Operator	Operation phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Maximum amount of semi and unskilled labour locally sourced where possible.</li> <li>» Local suppliers and SMMEs contracted where possible.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Indicators listed above must be met for the operation phase.</li> </ul>

**OBJECTIVE 10: Implement an appropriate fire management plan during the operation phase**

The vegetation on the site may be at risk of fire, especially during drought conditions experienced in the area. The increased presence of people on the site could increase the risk of veld fires, particularly in the dry season.

<b>Project Component/s</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Operation and maintenance of the solar facility and associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Potential Impact</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» Veld fires can pose a personal safety risk to local farmers and communities, and their homes, crops, livestock and farm infrastructure, such as gates and fences. In addition, fire can pose a risk to the solar facility infrastructure.</li> </ul>
<b>Activities/Risk Sources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The presence of operation and maintenance personnel and their activities on the site can increase the risk of veld fires.</li> </ul>

<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	» To avoid and or minimise the potential risk of veld fires on local communities and their livelihoods.
---	---

<b>Mitigation: Action/Control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Provide adequate firefighting equipment on site. Apply for membership to the local Fire Protection Association, should there be one.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Provide fire-fighting training to selected operation and maintenance staff.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Ensure that appropriate communication channels are established to be implemented in the event of a fire.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Fire breaks should be established where and when required. Cognisance must be taken of the relevant legislation when planning and burning firebreaks (in terms of timing, etc.). Access roads may also act as fire breaks.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Upon completion of the construction phase, an emergency evacuation plan must be drawn up to ensure the safety of the staff and surrounding land users in the case of an emergency.	O&M Operator	Operation phase
Contact details of emergency services should be prominently displayed on site.	O&M Operator	Operation phase

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	» Firefighting equipment and training provided before the construction phase commences. » Appropriate fire breaks in place.
<b>Monitoring and Reporting</b>	» The Developer must monitor indicators listed above to ensure that they have been met.

### **OBJECTIVE 11: Ensure appropriate operation and maintenance of the battery energy storage system**

<b>Project Component/s</b>	» Battery Energy Storage System.
<b>Potential Impact</b>	» Fire and safety risks » Leakages and impacts on soils and water resources.
<b>Activities/Risk Sources</b>	» Inappropriate operation and maintenance of BESS.
<b>Mitigation: Target/Objective</b>	» To avoid and or minimise the potential risk of associated with the operation and maintenance of the BESS.

<b>Mitigation: Action/control</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Compile (and adhere to) a procedure for the safe handling of battery cells	O&M Contractor	Operation
Ensure that battery supplier user guides, safety specifications and MSDS are filed on site at all times.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Operate, maintain and monitor the BESS as per supplier specifications.	O&M Contractor	Operation

Mitigation: Action/control	Responsibility	Timeframe
Compile method statements for approval by the Technical/SHEQ Manager for battery cell, electrolyte and battery cell/ container replacement. Maintain method statements on site.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Ensure that all maintenance contractors/ staff are familiar with the supplier's specifications.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Provide signage on site specifying the types of batteries in use and the risk of exposure to hazardous material and electric shock.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Provide signage on site specifying how electrical and chemical fires should be dealt with by first responders, and the potential risks to first responders (e.g. toxic fumes). Provide suitable firefighting equipment on site.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Maintain strict access control to the battery storage area.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Undertake regular visual checks on BESS equipment to identify signs of damage or leaks.	O&M Contractor	Operation
Provide environmental awareness training to all personnel on site. Training should include discussion of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Potential impact of electrolyte spills on groundwater;</li> <li>o Suitable disposal of waste and effluent;</li> <li>o Key measures in the EMPr relevant to worker's activities;</li> <li>o How incidents and suggestions for improvement can be reported.</li> </ul> Ensure that all attendees remain for the duration of the training and on completion sign an attendance register that clearly indicates participants' names.	O&M Contractor	Operation

<b>Performance Indicator</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» BESS operated and maintained in accordance with supplier specifications.</li> <li>» Appropriate signage on site.</li> <li>» Employees appropriately trained.</li> <li>» Required documentation available on site.</li> <li>» Firefighting equipment and training provided before the operation phase commences.</li> </ul>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>» The O&amp;M contractor must monitor indicators listed above to ensure that they have been met.</li> </ul>

## 8.2. Monitoring Programme: Operation Phase of Mutsho Solar PV4

**OBJECTIVE 12: To monitor the performance of the control strategies employed against environmental objectives and standards**

A monitoring programme must be in place not only to ensure conformance with the EMPr, but also to monitor any environmental issues and impacts which have not been accounted for in the EMPr that are, or could result in significant environmental impacts for which corrective action is required. An internal environmental audit must be conducted every 6 months and an external audit must be conducted once a year in order to confirm compliance with the requirements of all environmental permits (including the Environmental Authorisation, once issued) for the project, this EMPr, and all relevant legislation. The results of the audit

reports must be made available to the DFFE and the relevant authorities on request, and must be part of monitoring and audit reports. An annual audit report must be compiled and submitted to DFFE. The aim of the auditing process would be to routinely monitor the implementation of the specified environmental specifications, in order to:

- » Monitor and audit compliance with the prescriptive and procedural terms of the environmental specifications.
- » Ensure adequate and appropriate interventions to address non-compliance.
- » Ensure adequate and appropriate interventions to address environmental degradation.
- » Provide a mechanism for the lodging and resolution of public complaints.
- » Ensure appropriate and adequate record keeping related to environmental compliance.
- » Determine the effectiveness of the environmental specifications and recommend the requisite changes and updates based on audit outcomes, in order to enhance the efficacy of environmental management on site.
- » Aid in the communication and feedback to authorities and stakeholders.



## CHAPTER 9: MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME: DECOMMISSIONING

---

The solar infrastructure which will be utilised for Mutsho Solar PV4 is expected to have a lifespan of 25 years (with maintenance). Equipment associated with this solar facility would only be decommissioned once it has reached the end of its economic life. It is most likely that decommissioning activities of the infrastructure of the solar facility would comprise the dismantling and replacement of the solar panels with more appropriate technology/infrastructure available at that time. It must be noted that decommissioning activities will need to be undertaken in accordance with the legislation applicable at that time, which may require this section of the EMP to be revisited and amended.

*The relevant mitigation measures contained under the construction section should be applied during decommissioning and therefore are not repeated in this section.*

### » **Site Preparation**

Site preparation activities will include confirming the integrity of the access to the site to accommodate the required equipment, preparation of the site (e.g. laydown areas, construction platform) and the mobilisation of construction equipment.

### » **Dismantle and Remove Infrastructure**

The solar infrastructure (solar panels and mounting structures) of the solar facility will be dismantled once it reaches the end of its economic lifespan. Once dismantled, the components will be reused, recycled, or disposed of in accordance with regulatory requirements (NEMA / NEM:WA). All parts of the solar panels would be considered reusable or recyclable.

## 9.1. Objectives

In decommissioning Mutsho Solar PV4, Mutsho Power (Pty) Ltd must ensure that:

- » All structures not required for the post-decommissioning use of the site (may include the solar panels and mounting structures, substation, inverters and transformers, laydown areas, and O&M hub) are dismantled and/or demolished, removed and waste material disposed of at an appropriately licensed waste disposal site or as required by the relevant legislation.
- » Rehabilitate access/service roads and servitudes not required for the post-decommissioning use of the site. If necessary, an ecologist should be consulted to give input into rehabilitation specifications.
- » All disturbed areas are compacted, sloped and contoured to ensure drainage and runoff and to minimise the risk of erosion.
- » Dust management needs to be undertaken in the areas where the infrastructure will be removed. This includes wetting of the soil. This area must be rehabilitated as soon as possible.
- » Monitor rehabilitated areas quarterly for at least a year following decommissioning and implement remedial action as and when required.
- » Any fauna encountered during decommissioning activities should be removed to safety by a suitably qualified person.
- » All vehicles to adhere to low speed limits (i.e. 40km/h max) on the site, to reduce risk of faunal collisions as well as reduce dust.
- » The area must be walked through prior to decommissioning to ensure fauna species are not affected by the removal of the infrastructure.

- » Retrenchments should comply with South African Labour legislation of the day.
- » Recycling lithium-ion batteries at accredited e-waste recycling facilities allows for resource conservation by recovering viable materials including cobalt, lead, iron, plastic, lithium, aluminum, and more.

## 9.2. Approach to the Decommissioning Phase

It is recommended that planning of the decommissioning of the project and rehabilitation of the site should take place well in advance (at least two years) of the planned decommissioning activities. Important factors that need to be taken into consideration are detailed below.

Two possible scenarios for this decommissioning phase are detailed below:

### SCENARIO 1: TOTAL DECOMMISSIONING OF THE FACILITY

If the decision is taken at the end of the project lifespan to totally decommission the facility, i.e. make the land available for an alternative land use, the following should take place:

- » All concrete and imported foreign material must be removed from site
- » The ground must be levelled and covered with subsoil and topsoil where exposed by the decommissioning activities.
- » Infrastructure not required for the post-decommissioning use of the site must be removed and appropriately disposed of, recycled or resold as appropriate, in accordance with applicable regulations at the time of decommissioning.
- » Access roads and servitudes not required for the post-decommissioning use of the site must be rehabilitated. If necessary, an ecologist should be consulted to give input into rehabilitation specifications.
- » Tracks that are to be utilised for the future land use operations should be left *in-situ*. The remainder of the tracks to be removed (ripped) and topsoil replaced.
- » All ancillary buildings and access points are to be removed unless they can be used for the future land use.
- » Underground electric cables are to be removed if they cannot be used in the future land use.
- » All material or components must be re-used or recycled wherever possible.
- » Where not possible to recycle, materials should be appropriately disposed of.
- » The competent authority may grant approval to the owner not to remove the landscaping and underground foundations.
- » The site must be seeded with locally sourced indigenous vegetation (unless otherwise dictated by the future land use) to allow revegetation of the site.
- » Monitor rehabilitated areas quarterly for at least two years (expected) following decommissioning, and implement remedial action as and when required, or as frequently as determined by a qualified botanist at the time of decommissioning.

### SCENARIO 2: PARTIAL DECOMMISSIONING OF THE FACILITY

Should more advanced technology become available it may be decided to continue to use the site as a battery energy storage system. Much of the existing infrastructure is likely to be re-used in the upgraded facility. In this case, all infrastructure that will no longer be required for the upgraded facility must be removed as described for Scenario 1. The remainder of the infrastructure should remain in place or

upgraded depending on the requirements of the new facility. Any upgrades to the facility at this stage must comply with relevant legislation applicable at the time.

#### **9.2.1. Identification of structures for post-closure use**

Access roads should be assessed in conjunction with the future land users to determine if these could be used. Where not required, these access roads should be decommissioned and rehabilitated.

#### **9.2.2. Removal of infrastructure**

All infrastructure must be dismantled and removed. Inert material must be removed from site and disposed of at a suitably registered landfill site. The facility components must be removed and recycled where possible or disposed of at a suitably registered landfill site. All foundations must be removed to a depth of 1m. Hard surfaces must be ripped to a depth of 1m and vegetated.

#### **9.2.3. Soil rehabilitation**

The steps that should be taken during the rehabilitation of soils are as follows:

- » The deposited soils must be ripped to ensure reduced compaction;
- » An acceptable seed bed should be produced by surface tillage;
- » Restore soil fertility;

#### **9.2.4. Establishment of vegetation**

The objective is to restore the development area to a self-sustaining cycle, i.e. to realise the re-establishment of the natural nutrient cycle with ecological succession initiated.

The objectives for the re-vegetation of reshaped and top-soiled land are to:

- » Prevent erosion;
- » Restore the land to the agreed land capability;
- » Re-establish eco-system processes to ensure that a sustainable land use can be established without requiring fertilizer additions; and
- » Restore the biodiversity of the area as far as possible.

#### **9.2.5. Maintenance**

Established vegetation requires regular maintenance. If the growth medium consists of low-fertility soils, then regular maintenance will be required until the natural fertility cycle has been restored.

#### **9.2.6. Monitoring**

The purpose of monitoring is to ensure that the objectives of rehabilitation are met, and that the rehabilitation process is followed. The physical aspects of rehabilitation should be carefully monitored during the progress of establishment of desired final ecosystems

The following items should be monitored continuously:

- » Erosion status; and
- » Faunal and floral species diversity
- » Spread of alien invasive species

The general specifications of Chapter 6 (Construction) and Chapter 7 (Rehabilitation) are also relevant to the decommissioning of Mutsho Solar PV4 and must be adhered to.

**APPENDIX A:**  
**CURRICULUM VITAE OF THE PROJECT TEAM**

## CURRICULUM VITAE OF JO-ANNE THOMAS

<b>Profession:</b>	Environmental Management and Compliance Consultant; Environmental Assessment Practitioner
<b>Specialisation:</b>	Environmental Management; Strategic environmental advice; Environmental compliance advice & monitoring; Environmental Impact Assessments; Policy, strategy & guideline formulation; Project Management; General Ecology
<b>Work experience:</b>	Twenty four (24) years in the environmental field

### VOCATIONAL EXPERIENCE

Provide technical input for projects in the environmental management field, specialising in Strategic Environmental Advice, Environmental Impact Assessment studies, environmental auditing and monitoring, environmental permitting, public participation, Environmental Management Plans and Programmes, environmental policy, strategy and guideline formulation, and integrated environmental management. Key focus on integration of the specialist environmental studies and findings into larger engineering-based projects, strategic assessment, and providing practical and achievable environmental management solutions and mitigation measures. Responsibilities for environmental studies include project management (including client and authority liaison and management of specialist teams); review and manipulation of data; identification and assessment of potential negative environmental impacts and benefits; review of specialist studies; and the identification of mitigation measures. Compilation of the reports for environmental studies is in accordance with all relevant environmental legislation.

Undertaking of numerous environmental management studies has resulted in a good working knowledge of environmental legislation and policy requirements. Recent projects have been undertaken for both the public- and private-sector, including compliance advice and monitoring, electricity generation and transmission projects, various types of linear developments (such as National Road, local roads and power lines), waste management projects (landfills), mining rights and permits, policy, strategy and guideline development, as well as general environmental planning, development and management.

### SKILLS BASE AND CORE COMPETENCIES

- Project management for a range of projects
- Identification and assessment of potential negative environmental impacts and benefits through the review and manipulation of data and specialist studies
- Identification of practical and achievable mitigation and management measures and the development of appropriate management plans
- Compilation of environmental reports in accordance with relevant environmental legislative requirements
- External and peer review of environmental reports & compliance advice and monitoring
- Formulation of environmental policies, strategies and guidelines
- Strategic and regional assessments; pre-feasibility & site selection
- Public participation processes for a variety of projects
- Strategic environmental advice to a wide variety of clients both in the public and private sectors
- Working knowledge of environmental planning processes, policies, regulatory frameworks and legislation

## EDUCATION AND PROFESSIONAL STATUS

### Degrees:

- B.Sc Earth Sciences, University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg (1993)
- B.Sc Honours in Botany, University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg (1994)
- M.Sc in Botany, University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg (1996)

### Short Courses:

- Environmental Impact Assessment, Potchefstroom University (1998)
- Environmental Law, Morgan University (2001)
- Environmental Legislation, IMBEWU (2017)
- Mining Legislation, Cameron Cross & Associates (2013)
- Environmental and Social Risk Management (ESRM), International Finance Corporation (2018)

### Professional Society Affiliations:

- Registered EAP with the Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association of South Africa (EAPASA) (2019/726)
- Registered with the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions as a Professional Natural Scientist: Environmental Scientist (400024/00)
- Registered with the International Association for Impact Assessment South Africa (IAIASa): 5601
- Member of the South African Wind Energy Association (SAWEA)

## EMPLOYMENT

Date	Company	Roles and Responsibilities
January 2006 - Current:	Savannah Environmental (Pty) Ltd	Director Project manager Independent specialist environmental consultant, Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) and advisor.
1997 – 2005:	Bohlweki Environmental (Pty) Ltd	Senior Environmental Scientist at. Environmental Management and Project Management
January – July 1997:	Sutherland High School, Pretoria	Junior Science Teacher

## PROJECT EXPERIENCE

Project experience includes large infrastructure projects, including electricity generation and transmission, wastewater treatment facilities, mining and prospecting activities, property development, and national roads, as well as strategy and guidelines development.

## RENEWABLE POWER GENERATION PROJECTS: PHOTOVOLTAIC SOLAR ENERGY FACILITIES

### Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Christiana PV 2 SEF, North West	Solar Reserve South Africa	Project Manager & EAP
De Aar PV facility, Northern Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Everest SEF near Hennenman, Free State	FRV Energy South Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Graafwater PV SEF, Western Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Grootkop SEF near Allanridge, Free State	FRV Energy South Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Hertzogville PV 2 SEF with 2 phases, Free State	SunCorp / Solar Reserve	Project Manager & EAP



Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Karoshhoek CPV facility on site 2 as part of the larger Karoshhoek Solar Valley Development East of Upington, Northern Cape	FG Emvelo	Project Manager & EAP
Kgabalatsane SEF North-East for Brits, North West	Built Environment African Energy Services	Project Manager & EAP
Kleinbegin PV SEF West of Groblershoop, Northern Cape	MedEnergy Global	Project Manager & EAP
Lethabo Power Station PV Installation, Free State	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Majuba Power Station PV Installation, Mpumalanga	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Merapi PV SEF Phase 1 – 4 South-East of Excelsior, Free State	SolaireDirect Southern Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Sannaspos Solar Park, Free State	SolaireDirect Southern Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Ofir-Zx PV Plant near Keimoes, Northern Cape	S28 Degrees Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Oryx SEF near Virginia, Free State	FRV Energy South Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Project Blue SEF North of Kleinsee, Northern Cape	WWK Development	Project Manager & EAP
S-Kol PV Plant near Keimoes, Northern Cape	S28 Degrees Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Sonnenberg PV Plant near Keimoes, Northern Cape	S28 Degrees Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Tutuka Power Station PV Installation, Mpumalanga	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Two PV sites within the Northern Cape	MedEnergy Global	Project Manager & EAP
Two PV sites within the Western & Northern Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Upington PV SEF, Northern Cape	MedEnergy Global	Project Manager & EAP
Vredendal PV facility, Western Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Waterberg PV plant, Limpopo	Thupela Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Watershed Phase I & II SEF near Litchtenburg, North West	FRV Energy South Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Alldays PV & CPV SEF Phase 1, Limpopo	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Hyperion PV Solar Development 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 & 6, Northern Cape	Building Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Vrede & Rondavel PV, Free State	Mainstream Renewable Energy Developments	Project Manager & EAP

#### Basic Assessments

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Aberdeen PV SEF, Eastern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Christiana PV 1 SEF on Hartebeestpan Farm, North-West	Solar Reserve South Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Heuningspruit PV1 & PV 2 facilities near Koppies, Free State	Sun Mechanics	Project Manager & EAP
Kakamas PV Facility, Northern Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Kakamas II PV Facility, Northern Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Machadodorp 1 PV SEF, Mpumalanga	Solar To Benefit Africa	Project Manager & EAP
PV site within the Northern Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
PV sites within 4 ACSA airports within South Africa, National	Airports Company South Africa (ACSA)	Project Manager & EAP
RustMo1 PV Plant near Buffelspoort, North West	Momentous Energy	Project Manager & EAP
RustMo2 PV Plant near Buffelspoort, North West	Momentous Energy	Project Manager & EAP
RustMo3 PV Plant near Buffelspoort, North West	Momentous Energy	Project Manager & EAP
RustMo4 PV Plant near Buffelspoort, North West	Momentous Energy	Project Manager & EAP

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Sannaspos PV SEF Phase 2 near Bloemfontein, Free State	SolaireDirect Southern Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Solar Park Expansion within the Rooiwal Power Station, Gauteng	AFRKO Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Steynsrus SEF, Free State	SunCorp	Project Manager & EAP
Sirius Solar PV Project Three and Sirius Solar PV Project Four (BA in terms of REDZ regulations), Northern Cape	SOLA Future Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Northam PV, Limpopo Province	Northam Platinum	Project Manager & EAP
Kolkies PV Suite (x 6 projects) and Sadawa PV Suite (x 4 projects), Western Cape	Mainstream Renewable Energy Developments	Project Manager & EAP

#### Screening Studies

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Allemans Fontein SEF near Noupoot, Northern Cape	Fusion Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Amandel SEF near Thabazimbi, Limpopo	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Arola/Doomplaat SEF near Ventersdorp, North West	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Bloemfontein Airport PV Installation, Free State	The Power Company	Project Manager & EAP
Brakspuit SEF near Klerksorp, North West	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Carolus Poort SEF near Noupoot, Northern Cape	Fusion Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Damfontein SEF near Noupoot, Northern Cape	Fusion Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Everest SEF near Welkom, Free State	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Gillmer SEF near Noupoot, Northern Cape	Fusion Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Grootkop SEF near Allansridge, Free State	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Heuningspruit PV1 & PV 2 near Koppies, Free State	Cronimat	Project Manager & EAP
Kimberley Airport PV Installation, Northern Cape	The Power Company	Project Manager & EAP
Kolonnade Mall Rooftop PV Installation in Tshwane, Gauteng	Momentous Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Loskop SEF near Groblersdal, Limpopo	S&P Power Unit	Project Manager & EAP
Marble SEF near Marble Hall, Limpopo	S&P Power Unit	Project Manager & EAP
Morgenson PV1 SEF South-West of Windsorton, Northern Cape	Solar Reserve South Africa	Project Manager & EAP
OR Tambo Airport PV Installation, Gauteng	The Power Company	Project Manager & EAP
Oryx SEF near Virginia, Free State	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Rhino SEF near Vaalwater, Limpopo	S&P Power Unit	Project Manager & EAP
Rustmo2 PV Plant near Buffelspoort, North West	Momentous Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Spitskop SEF near Northam, Limpopo	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Steynsrus PV, Free State	Suncorp	Project Manager & EAP
Tabor SEF near Polokwane, Limpopo	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Upington Airport PV Installation, Northern Cape	The Power Company	Project Manager & EAP
Valeria SEF near Hartebeestpoort Dam, North West	Solar to Benefit Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Watershed SEF near Lichtenburg, North West	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Witkop SEF near Polokwane, Limpopo	FRV & iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Woodmead Retail Park Rooftop PV Installation, Gauteng	Momentous Energy	Project Manager & EAP

#### Environmental Compliance, Auditing and ECO

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
ECO and bi-monthly auditing for the construction of the Adams Solar PV Project Two South of Hotazel,	Enel Green Power	Project Manager

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Northern Cape		
ECO for the construction of the Kathu PV Facility, Northern Cape	REISA	Project Manager
ECO and bi-monthly auditing for the construction of the Pulida PV Facility, Free State	Enel Green Power	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the RustMo1 SEF, North West	Momentous Energy	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Sishen SEF, Northern Cape	Windfall 59 Properties	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Upington Airport PV Facility, Northern Cape	Sublunary Trading	Project Manager
Quarterly compliance monitoring of compliance with all environmental licenses for the operation activities at the Kathu PV facility, Northern Cape	REISA	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Konkoonies II PV SEF and associated infrastructure, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Aggeneys PV SEF and associated infrastructure, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager

#### Compliance Advice and ESAP Reporting

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Aggeneys Solar Farm, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Environmental Advisor
Airies II PV Facility SW of Kenhardt, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Environmental Advisor
Kalahari SEF Phase II in Kathu, Northern Cape	Engle	Environmental Advisor
Kathu PV Facility, Northern Cape	Building Energy	Environmental Advisor
Kenhardt PV Facility, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Environmental Advisor
Kleinbegin PV SEF West of Groblershoop, Northern Cape	MedEnergy	Environmental Advisor
Konkoonies II SEF near Pofadder, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Environmental Advisor
Konkoonies Solar Farm, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Environmental Advisor
Lephalale SEF, Limpopo	Exxaro	Environmental Advisor
Pixley ka Seme PV Park, South-East of De Aar, Northern Cape	African Clean Energy Developments (ACED)	Environmental Advisor
RustMo1 PV Plant near Buffelspoort, North West	Momentous Energy	Environmental Advisor
Scuitdrift 1 SEF & Scuitdrift 2 SEF, Limpopo	Building Energy	Environmental Advisor
Sirius PV Plants, Northern Cape	Aurora Power Solutions	Environmental Advisor
Upington Airport PV Power Project, Northern Cape	Sublunary Trading	Environmental Advisor
Upington SEF, Northern Cape	Abengoa Solar	Environmental Advisor
Ofir-ZX PV SEF near Keimoes, Northern Cape	Network S28 Energy	Environmental Advisor
Environmental Permitting for the Steynsrus PV1 & PV2 SEF's, Northern Cape	Cronimet Power Solutions	Environmental Advisor
Environmental Permitting for the Heuningspruit PV SEF, Northern Cape	Cronimet Power Solutions	Environmental Advisor

#### Due Diligence Reporting

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
5 PV SEF projects in Lephalale, Limpopo	iNca Energy	Environmental Advisor
Prieska PV Plant, Northern Cape	SunEdison Energy India	Environmental Advisor
Sirius Phase One PV Facility near Upington, Northern Cape	Aurora Power Solutions	Environmental Advisor

**Environmental Permitting, S53, Water Use Licence (WUL), Waste Management Licence (WML) & Other Applications**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Biodiversity Permit & WULA for the Aggeneys SEF near Aggeneys, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Biodiversity Permit for the Konkoonises II SEF near Pofadder, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Biodiversity Permitting for the Lephalale SEF, Limpopo	Exxaro Resources	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Kleinbegin PV SEF West of Groblershoop, Northern Cape	MedEnergy	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Upington SEF, Northern Cape	Abengoa Solar	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Kathu PV Facility, Northern Cape	Building Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Konkoonises Solar Farm, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Lephalale SEF, Limpopo	Exxaro Resources	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Scuitdrift 1 SEF & Scuitdrift 2 SEF, Limpopo	Building Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Sirius PV Plant, Northern Cape	Aurora Power Solutions	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Steynsrus PV1 & PV2 SEF's, Northern Cape	Cronimet Power Solutions	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Heuningspruit PV SEF, Northern Cape	Cronimet Power Solutions	Project Manager & EAP
Permits for the Kleinbegin and UAP PV Plants, Northern Cape	MedEnergy Global	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for Arriesfontein Solar Park Phase 1 – 3 near Danielskuil, Northern Cape	Solar Reserve / SunCorp	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for Hertzogville PV1 & PV 2 SEFs, Free State	Solar Reserve / SunCorp	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for the Bloemfontein Airport PV Facility, Free State	Sublunary Trading	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for the Kimberley Airport PV Facility, Northern Cape	Sublunary Trading	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for the Project Blue SEF, Northern Cape	WWK Developments	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for the Upington Airport PV Facility, Free State	Sublunary Trading	Project Manager & EAP
WULA for the Kalahari SEF Phase II in Kathu, Northern Cape	Engie	Project Manager & EAP

**RENEWABLE POWER GENERATION PROJECTS: CONCENTRATED SOLAR FACILITIES (CSP)****Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Ilanga CSP 2, 3, 4, 5, 7 & 9 Facilities near Upington, Northern Cape	Emvelo Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Ilanga CSP near Upington, Northern Cape	Ilangehu Energy	Project Manager & EAP

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Ilanga Tower 1 Facility near Upington, Northern Cape	Emvelo Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Karoshhoek CPVPD 1-4 facilities on site 2 as part of the larger Karoshhoek Solar Valley Development East of Upington, Northern Cape	FG Emvelo	Project Manager & EAP
Karoshhoek CSP facilities on sites 1.4; 4 & 5 as part of the larger Karoshhoek Solar Valley Development East of Upington, Northern Cape	FG Emvelo	Project Manager & EAP
Karoshhoek Linear Fresnel 1 Facility on site 1.1 as part of the larger Karoshhoek Solar Valley Development East of Upington, Northern Cape	FG Emvelo	Project Manager & EAP

#### Environmental Compliance, Auditing and ECO

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
ECO for the construction of the !Khi CSP Facility, Northern Cape	Abengoa Solar	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Ilanga CSP 1 Facility near Upington, Northern Cape	Karoshhoek Solar One	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the folar Park, Northern Cape	Kathu Solar	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the KaXu! CSP Facility, Northern Cape	Abengoa Solar	Project Manager
Internal audit of compliance with the conditions of the IWUL issued to the Karoshhoek Solar One CSP Facility, Northern Cape	Karoshhoek Solar One	Project Manager

#### Screening Studies

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Upington CSP (Tower) Plant near Kanoneiland, Northern Cape	iNca Energy and FRV	Project Manager & EAP

#### Compliance Advice and ESAP reporting

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Ilanga CSP Facility near Upington, Northern Cape	Ilangethu Energy	Environmental Advisor
Ilangalethu CSP 2, Northern Cape	FG Emvelo	Environmental Advisor
Kathu CSP Facility, Northern Cape	GDF Suez	Environmental Advisor
Lephalale SEF, Limpopo	Cennergi	Environmental Advisor
Solis I CSP Facility, Northern Cape	Brightsource	Environmental Advisor

#### Environmental Permitting, S53, Water Use Licence (WUL), Waste Management Licence (WML) & Other Applications

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Environmental Permitting for the Ilanga CSP Facility near Upington, Northern Cape	Ilangethu Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Kathu CSP, Northern Cape	GDF Suez	Project Manager & EAP
WULA for the Solis I CSP Facility, Northern Cape	Brightsource	Project Manager & EAP

## **RENEWABLE POWER GENERATION PROJECTS: WIND ENERGY FACILITIES**

### **Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Sere WEF, Western Cape	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	EAP
Aberdeen WEF, Eastern Cape	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Amakhala Emoyeni WEF, Eastern Cape	Windlab Developments	Project Manager & EAP
EXXARO West Coast WEF, Western Cape	EXXARO Resources	Project Manager & EAP
Goereesoe Wind Farm near Swellendam, Western Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Hartneest WEF, Western Cape	Juwi Renewable Energies	Project Manager & EAP
Hopefield WEF, Western Cape	Umoya Energy	EAP
Kleinsee WEF, Northern Cape	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Klipheuwel/Dassiesfontein WEF within the Overberg area, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Moorreesburg WEF, Western Cape	iNca Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Oyster Bay WEF, Eastern Cape	Renewable Energy Resources Southern Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Project Blue WEF, Northern Cape	Windy World	Project Manager & EAP
Rheboksfontein WEF, Western Cape	Moyeng Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Spitskop East WEF near Riebeeck East, Eastern Cape	Renewable Energy Resources Southern Africa	Project Manager & EAP
Suurplaat WEF, Western Cape	Moyeng Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Swellendam WEF, Western Cape	IE Swellendam	Project Manager & EAP
Tsitsikamma WEF, Eastern Cape	Exxarro	Project Manager & EAP
West Coast One WEF, Western Cape	Moyeng Energy	Project Manager & EAP

### **Basic Assessments**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Amakhala Emoyeni Wind Monitoring Masts, Eastern Cape	Windlab Developments	Project Manager & EAP
Beaufort West Wind Monitoring Masts, Western Cape	Umoya Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Hopefield Community Wind Farm near Hopefield, Western Cape	Umoya Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Koekenaap Wind Monitoring Masts, Western Cape	EXXARO Resources	Project Manager & EAP
Koingnaas WEF, Northern Cape	Just Palm Tree Power	Project Manager & EAP
Laingsburg Area Wind Monitoring Masts, Western Cape	Umoya Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Overberg Area Wind Monitoring Masts, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Oyster Bay Wind Monitoring Masts, Eastern Cape	Renewable Energy Systems Southern Africa (RES)	Project Manager & EAP
Wind Garden & Fronteer WEFs, Eastern Cape	Wind Relc	Project Manager & EAP

### **Screening Studies**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Albertinia WEF, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Koingnaas WEF, Northern Cape	Just Pal Tree Power	Project Manager & EAP
Napier Region WEF Developments, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Tsitsikamma WEF, Eastern Cape	Exxarro Resources	Project Manager & EAP

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Various WEFs within an identified area in the Overberg area, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Various WEFs within an identified area on the West Coast, Western Cape	Investec Bank Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Various WEFs within an identified area on the West Coast, Western Cape	Eskom Holdings Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Various WEFs within the Western Cape	Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning	Project Manager & EAP
Velddrift WEF, Western Cape	VentuSA Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Wind 1000 Project	Thabo Consulting on behalf of Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Wittekleibosch, Snylip & Doriskraal WEFs, Eastern Cape	Exxaro Resources	Project Manager & EAP

#### Environmental Compliance, Auditing and ECO

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
ECO for the construction of the West Coast One WEF, Western Cape	Aurora Wind Power	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Gouda WEF, Western Cape	Blue Falcon	Project Manager
EO for the Dassiesklip Wind Energy Facility, Western Cape	Group 5	Project Manager
Quarterly compliance monitoring of compliance with all environmental licenses for the operation activities at the Gouda Wind Energy facility near Gouda, Western Cape	Blue Falcon	Project Manager
Annual auditing of compliance with all environmental licenses for the operation activities at the West Coast One Wind Energy facility near Vredenburg, Western Cape	Aurora Wind Power	Project Manager
External environmental and social audit for the Amakhala Wind Farm, Eastern Cape	Cennergi	Project Manager
External environmental and social audit for the Tsitsikamma Wind Farm, Eastern Cape	Cennergi	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Excelsior Wind Farm and associated infrastructure, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager
External compliance audit of the Dassiesklip Wind Energy Facility, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager

#### Compliance Advice

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Amakhala Phase 1 WEF, Eastern Cape	Cennergi	Environmental Advisor
Dassiesfontein WEF within the Overberg area, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Environmental Advisor
Excelsior Wind Farm, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Environmental Advisor
Great Karoo Wind Farm, Northern Cape	African Clean Energy Developments (ACED)	Environmental Advisor
Hopefield Community WEF, Western Cape	African Clean Energy Developments (ACED)	Environmental Advisor



Rheboksfontein WEF, Western Cape	Moyeng Energy	Environmental Advisor
Tiqua WEF, Western Cape	Cennergi	Environmental Advisor
Tsitsikamma WEF, Eastern Cape	Cennergi	Environmental Advisor
West Coast One WEF, Western Cape	Moyeng Energy	Environmental Advisor

#### Due Diligence Reporting

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Witteberg WEF, Western Cape	EDPR Renewables	Environmental Advisor
IPD Vredenburg WEF within the Saldanha Bay area, Western Cape	IL&FS Energy Development Company	Environmental Advisor

#### Environmental Permitting, S53, Water Use Licence (WUL), Waste Management Licence (WML) & Other Applications

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Biodiversity Permitting for the Power Line between the Tsitsikamma Community WEF & the Diep River Substation, Eastern Cape	Cennergi	Project Manager & EAP
Biodiversity Permitting for the West Coast One WEF, Western Cape	Aurora Wind Power	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for the Excelsior WEF, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Plant Permits & WULA for the Tsitsikamma Community WEF, Eastern Cape	Cennergi	Project Manager & EAP
S24G and WULA for the Rectification for the commencement of unlawful activities on Ruimsig AH in Honeydew, Gauteng	Hossam Soror	Project Manager & EAP
S24G Application for the Rheboksfontein WEF, Western Cape	Ormonde - Theo Basson	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application & WULA for Suurplaat and Gemini WEFs, Northern Cape	Engie	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for the Hopefield Community Wind Farm near Hopefield, Western Cape	Umoya Energy	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for the Project Blue WEF, Northern Cape	WWK Developments	Project Manager & EAP
S53 for the Oyster Bay WEF, Eastern Cape	RES	Project Manager & EAP
WULA for the Great Karoo Wind Farm, Northern Cape	African Clean Energy Developments (ACED)	Project Manager & EAP

#### CONVENTIONAL POWER GENERATION PROJECTS (COAL)

##### Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Mutsho Power Station near Makhado, Limpopo	Mutsho Consortium	Project Manager & EAP
Coal-fired Power Station near Ogies, Mpumalanga	Ruukki SA	Project Manager & EAP
Thabametsi IPP Coal-fired Power Station, near Lephalale, Limpopo	Axia	Project Manager & EAP
Transalloys Coal-fired Power Station, Mpumalanga	Transalloys	Project Manager & EAP
Tshivasho IPP Coal-fired Power Station (with WML), near Lephalale, Limpopo	Cennergi	Project Manager & EAP
Umbani Coal-fired Power Station, near Kriel, Mpumalanga	ISS Global Mining	Project Manager & EAP

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Waterberg IPP Coal-Fired Power Station near Lephalale, Limpopo	Exxaro Resources	Project Manager & EAP

#### Basic Assessments

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Coal Stockyard on Medupi Ash Dump Site, Limpopo	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Biomass Co-Firing Demonstration Facility at Arnot Power Station East of Middleburg, Mpumlanaga	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP

#### Screening Studies

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Baseload Power Station near Lephalale, Limpopo	Cennergi	Project Manager & EAP
Coal-Fired Power Plant near Delmas, Mpumalanga	Exxaro Resources	Project Manager & EAP
Makhado Power Station, Limpopo	Mutsho Consortium, Limpopo	Project Manager & EAP

#### Environmental Compliance, Auditing and ECO

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
ECO for the Camden Power Station, Mpumalanga	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager

#### Compliance Advice

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Thabametsi IPP Coal-fired Power Station, near Lephalale, Limpopo	Axia	Environmental Advisor

#### Environmental Permitting, S53, Water Use Licence (WUL), Waste Management Licence (WML) & Other Applications

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Permit application for the Thabametsi Bulk Water Pipeline, near Lephalale, Limpopo	Axia	Project Manager & EAP
S53 & WULA for the Waterberg IPP Coal-Fired Power Station near Lephalale, Limpopo	Exxaro Resources	Project Manager & EAP
S53 Application for the Tshivasho Coal-fired Power Station near Lephalale, Limpopo	Cennergi	Project Manager & EAP

### CONVENTIONAL POWER GENERATION PROJECTS (GAS)

#### Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Ankerlig OCGT to CCGT Conversion project & 400 kV transmission power line between Ankerlig and the Omega Substation, Western Cape	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Gourikwa OCGT to CCGT Conversion project & 400kV transmission power line between Gourikwa & Proteus Substation, Western Cape	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Richards Bay Gas to Power Combined Cycle Power Station, KwaZulu-Natal	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Richards Bay Gas to Power Plant, KwaZulu-Natal	Richards Bay Gas Power 2	Project Manager & EAP
Decommissioning & Recommissioning of 3 Gas Turbine Units at Acacia Power Station & 1 Gas Turbine Unit at Port Rex Power Station to the existing	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Ankerlig Power Station in Atlantis Industria, Western Cape		
320MW gas-to-power station in Richards Bay, KwaZulu-Natal	Phinda Power Projects	Project Manager & EAP

#### Screening Studies

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Fatal Flaw Analysis for 3 area identified for the establishment of a 500MW CCGT Power Station	Globeleq Advisors Limited	Project Manager & EAP
Richards Bay Gas to Power Combined Cycle Power Station, KwaZulu-Natal	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager & EAP

#### GRID INFRASTRUCTURE PROJECTS

##### Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Aggeneis-Oranjemond Transmission Line & Substation Upgrade, Northern Cape	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Ankerlig-Omega Transmission Power Lines, Western Cape	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Karoshhoek Grid Integration project as part of the Karoshhoek Solar Valley Development East of Upington, Northern Cape	FG Emvelo	Project Manager & EAP
Koeberg-Omega Transmission Power Lines,, Western Cape	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Koeberg-Stikland Transmission Power Lines, Western Cape	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Kyalami Strengthening Project, Gauteng	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Mokopane Integration Project, Limpopo	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Saldanha Bay Strengthening Project, Western Cape	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Steelpoort Integration Project, Limpopo	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Transmission Lines from the Koeberg-2 Nuclear Power Station site, Western Cape	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Tshwane Strengthening Project, Phase 1, Gauteng	Eskom Transmission	Project Manager & EAP
Main Transmission Substation (MTS) associated with the Choje Wind Farm cluster, Eastern Cape	Wind Relic	Project Manager & EAP

#### Basic Assessments

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Dassenberg-Koeberg Power Line Deviation from the Koeberg to the Ankerlig Power Station, Western Cape	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Golden Valley II WEF Power Line & Substation near Cookhouse, Eastern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Golden Valley WEF Power Line near Cookhouse, Eastern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Karoshhoek Grid Integration project as part of the Karoshhoek Solar Valley Development East of Upington, Northern Cape	FG Emvelo	Project Manager & EAP

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Konkoonsies II PV SEF Power Line to the Paulputs Substation near Pofadder, Northern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Perdekraal West WEF Powerline to the Eskom Kappa Substation, Western Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Rheboksfontein WEF Powerline to the Aurora Substation, Western Cape	Moyeng Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Soetwater Switching Station near Sutherland, Northern Cape	African Clean Energy Developments (ACED)	Project Manager & EAP
Solis Power I Power Line & Switchyard Station near Upington, Northern Cape	Brightsource	Project Manager & EAP
Stormwater Canal System for the Ilanga CSP near Upington, Northern Cape	Karoshhoek Solar One	Project Manager & EAP
Tsitsikamma Community WEF Powerline to the Diep River Substation, Eastern Cape	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Two 132kV Chickadee Lines to the new Zonnebloem Switching Station, Mpumalanga	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Electrical Grid Infrastructure for the Kolkies and Sadawa PV clusters, Western Cape	Mainstream Renewable Energy Developments	Project Manager & EAP
Sadawa Collector substation, Western Cape	Mainstream Renewable Energy Developments	Project Manager & EAP
Electrical Grid Infrastructure for the Vrede and Rondavel PV facilities, Free State	Mainstream Renewable Energy Developments	Project Manager & EAP

#### Environmental Compliance, Auditing and ECO

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
ECO for the construction of the Ferrum-Mookodi Transmission Line, Northern Cape and North West	Trans-Africa Projects on behalf of Eskom	Project Manager
EO for the construction of the Gamma-Kappa Section A Transmission Line, Western Cape	Trans-Africa Projects on behalf of Eskom	Project Manager
EO for the construction of the Gamma-Kappa Section B Transmission Line, Western Cape	Trans-Africa Projects on behalf of Eskom	Project Manager
EO for the construction of the Hydra IPP Integration project, Northern Cape	Trans-Africa Projects on behalf of Eskom	Project Manager
EO for the construction of the Kappa-Sterrekus Section C Transmission Line, Western Cape	Trans-Africa Projects on behalf of Eskom	Project Manager
EO for the construction of the Namaqualand Strengthening project in Port Nolloth, Western Cape	Trans-Africa Projects on behalf of Eskom	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Neptune Substation Soil Erosion Mitigation Project, Eastern Cape	Eskom	Project Manager
ECO for the construction of the Ilanga-Gordonia 132kV power line, Northern Cape	Karoshhoek Solar One	Project Manager

#### Environmental Permitting, S53, Water Use Licence (WUL), Waste Management Licence (WML) & Other Applications

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Environmental Permitting and WULA for the Rockdale B Substation & Loop in Power Lines,	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting and WULA for the Steelpoort Integration project, Limpopo	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Permitting for Solis CSP near Upington, Northern Cape	Brightsource	Project Manager & EAP

## **MINING SECTOR PROJECTS**

### **Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Elitheni Coal Mine near Indwe, Eastern Cape	Elitheni Coal	Project Manager & EAP
Groot Letaba River Development Project Borrow Pits	Iiso	Project Manager & EAP
Grootegeluk Coal Mine for coal transportation infrastructure between the mine and Medupi Power Station (EMPr amendment) , Limpopo	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Waterberg Coal Mine (EMPr amendment), Limpopo	Seskoko Resources	Project Manager & EAP
Aluminium Plant WML & AEL, Gauteng	GfE-MIR Alloys & Minerals	Project Manager & EAP

### **Basic Assessments**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Rare Earth Separation Plant in Vredendal, Western Cape	Rareco	Project Manager & EAP
Decommissioning and Demolition of Kilns 5 & 6 at the Slurry Plant, Kwa-Zulu Natal	PPC	Project Manager & EAP

### **Environmental Compliance, Auditing and ECO**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
ECO for the construction of the Duhva Mine Water Recovery Project, Mpumalanga	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	Project Manager
External compliance audit of Palesa Coal Mine's Integrated Water Use License (IWUL), near KwaMhlanga, Mpumalanga	HCI Coal	Project Manager
External compliance audit of Palesa Coal Mine's Waste Management License (WML) and EMP, near KwaMhlanga, Mpumalanga	HCI Coal	Project Manager
External compliance audit of Mbali Coal Mine's Integrated Water Use License (IWUL), near Ogies, Mpumalanga	HCI Coal	Project Manager
Independent External Compliance Audit of Water Use License (WUL) for the Tronox Namakwa Sands (TNS) Mining Operations (Brand se Baai), Western Cape	Tronox Namakwa Sands	Project Manager
Independent External Compliance Audit of Water Use License (WUL) for the Tronox Namakwa Sands (TNS) Mineral Separation Plant (MSP), Western Cape	Tronox Namakwa Sands	Project Manager
Independent External Compliance Audit of Water Use License (WUL) for the Tronox Namakwa Sands (TNS) Smelter Operations (Saldanha), Western Cape	Tronox Namakwa Sands	Project Manager
Compliance Auditing of the Waste Management Licence for the PetroSA Landfill Site at the GTL Refinery, Western Cape	PetroSA	Project Manager

### **Environmental Permitting, S53, Water Use Licence (WUL), Waste Management Licence (WML) & Other Applications**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Waste Licence Application for the Rare Earth Separation Plant in Vredendal, Western Cape	Rareco	Project Manager & EAP

WULA for the Expansion of the Landfill site at Exxaro's Namakwa Sands Mineral Separation Plant, Western Cape	Exxaro Resources	Project Manager & EAP
S24G & WML for an Aluminium Plant, Gauteng	GfE-MIR Alloys & Minerals	Project Manager & EAP

#### **INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS (BRIDGES, PIPELINES, ROADS, WATER RESOURCES, STORAGE, ETC)**

##### **Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Bridge across the Ngotwane River, on the border of South Africa and Botswana	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Chemical Storage Tanks, Metallurgical Plant Upgrade & Backfill Plant upgrade at South Deep Gold Mine, near Westonia, Gauteng	Goldfields	Project Manager & EAP
Expansion of the existing Welgedacht Water Care Works, Gauteng	ERWAT	Project Manager & EAP
Golden Valley WEF Access Road near Cookhouse, Eastern Cape	BioTherm Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Great Fish River Wind Farm Access Roads and Watercourse Crossings near Cookhouse, Eastern Cape	African Clean Energy Developments (ACED)	Project Manager & EAP
Ilanga CSP Facility Watercourse Crossings near Upington, Northern Cape	Karoshhoek Solar one	Project Manager & EAP
Modification of the existing Hartebeestfontein Water Care Works, Gauteng	ERWAT	Project Manager & EAP
N10 Road Realignment for the Ilanga CSP Facility, East of Upington, Northern Cape	SANRAL	Project Manager & EAP
Nxuba (Bedford) Wind Farm Watercourse Crossings near Cookhouse, Eastern Cape	African Clean Energy Developments (ACED)	Project Manager & EAP
Pollution Control Dams at the Medupi Power Station Ash Dump & Coal Stockyard, Limpopo	Eskom	Project Manager & EAP
Qoboshane borrow pits (EMPr only), Eastern Cape	Emalahleni Local Municipality	Project Manager & EAP
Tsitsikamma Community WEF Watercourse Crossings, Eastern Cape	Cennergi	Project Manager & EAP
Clayville Central Steam Plant, Gauteng	Bellmall Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Msenge Emoyeni Wind Farm Watercourse Crossings and Roads, Eastern Cape	Windlab	Project Manager & EAP

##### **Basic Assessments**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Harmony Gold WWTW at Doornkop Mine, Gauteng	Harmony Doornkop Plant	Project Manager & EAP
Ofir-ZX Watercourse Crossing for the Solar PV Facility, near Keimoes, Northern Cape	Networx S28 Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Qoboshane bridge & access roads, Eastern Cape	Emalahleni Local Municipality	Project Manager & EAP
Relocation of the Assay Laboratory near Carletonville, Gauteng	Sibanye Gold	Project Manager & EAP
Richards Bay Harbour Staging Area, KwaZulu-Natal	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
S-Kol Watercourse Crossing for the Solar PV Facility, East of Keimoes, Northern Cape	Networx S28 Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Sonnenberg Watercourse Crossing for the Solar PV Facility, West Keimoes, Northern Cape	Networx S28 Energy	Project Manager & EAP

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Kruisvallei Hydroelectric Power Generation Scheme, Free State	Building Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Masetjaba Water Reservoir, Pump Station and Bulk Supply Pipeline near Nigel, Gauteng	Naidu Consulting Engineers	Project Manager & EAP
Access Road for the Dwarsug Wind Farm, Northern Cape Province	South Africa Mainsteam Renewable Power	Project Manager & EAP

#### Screening Studies

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Roodepoort Open Space Optimisation Programme (OSOP) Precinct, Gauteng	TIMAC Engineering Projects	Project Manager & EAP
Vegetable Oil Plant and Associated Pipeline, Kwa-Zulu Natal	Wilmar Oils and Fats Africa	Project Manager & EAP

#### Environmental Compliance, Auditing and ECO

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
ECO and bi-monthly auditing for the construction of the Olifants River Water Resources Development Project (ORWRDP) Phase 2A: De Hoop Dam, R555 realignment and housing infrastructure	Department of Water and Sanitation	Project Manager Auditor
ECO for the Rehabilitation of the Blaaupan & Storm Water Channel, Gauteng	Airports Company of South Africa (ACSA)	Project Manager
Due Diligence reporting for the Better Fuel Pyrolysis Facility, Gauteng	Better Fuels	Project Manager
ECO for the Construction of the Water Pipeline from Kendal Power Station to Kendal Pump Station, Mpumalanga	Transnet	Project Manager
ECO for the Replacement of Low-Level Bridge, Demolition and Removal of Artificial Pong, and Reinforcement the Banks of the Crocodile River at the Construction at Walter Sisulu National Botanical Gardens, Gauteng Province	South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI)	Project Manager
External Compliance Audit of the Air Emission Licence (AEL) for a depot in Bloemfontein, Free State Province and in Tzaneen, Mpumalanga Province	PetroSA	Project Manager

#### Environmental Permitting, S53, Water Use Licence (WUL), Waste Management Licence (WML) & Other Applications

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
WULA for the Izubulo Private Nature Reserve, Limpopo	Kjell Bismeyer, Jann Bader, Laurence Saad	Project Manager & EAP
WULA for the Masodini Private Game Lodge, Limpopo	Masodini Private Game Lodge	Environmental Advisor
WULA for the Ezulwini Private Nature Reserve, Limpopo	Ezulwini Investments	Project Manager & EAP
WULA for the Masodini Private Game Lodge, Limpopo	Masodini Private Game Lodge	Project Manager & EAP
WULA for the N10 Realignment at the Ilanga SEF, Northern Cape	Karoshhoek Solar One	Project Manager & EAP
WULA for the Kruisvallei Hydroelectric Power Generation Scheme, Free State	Building Energy	Project Manager & EAP



Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
S24G and WULA for the illegal construction of structures within a watercourse on EFF 24 Ruimsig Agricultural Holdings, Gauteng	Sorror Language Services	Project Manager & EAP

## **HOUSING AND URBAN PROJECTS**

### **Basic Assessments**

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Postmasburg Housing Development, Northern Cape	Transnet	Project Manager & EAP

### **Compliance Advice and reporting**

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Kampi ya Thude at the Olifants West Game Reserve, Limpopo	Nick Elliot	Environmental Advisor
External Compliance Audit of WUL for the Johannesburg Country Club, Gauteng	Johannesburg Country Club	Project Manager

### **Environmental Compliance, Auditing and ECO**

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Due Diligence Audit for the Due Diligence Audit Report, Gauteng	Delta BEC (on behalf of Johannesburg Development Agency (JDA))	Project Manager

## **ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT TOOLS**

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Development of the 3rd Edition Environmental Implementation Plan (EIP)	Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (GDARD)	Project Manager & EAP
Development of Provincial Guidelines on 4x4 routes, Western Cape	Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning	EAP
Compilation of Construction and Operation EMP for the Braamhoek Transmission Integration Project, Kwazulu-Natal	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Compilation of EMP for the Wholesale Trade of Petroleum Products, Gauteng	Munaca Technologies	Project Manager & EAP
Operational Environmental Management Programme (OEMP) for Medupi Power Station, Limpopo	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Operational Environmental Management Programme (OEMP) for the Dube TradePort Site Wide Precinct	Dube TradePort Corporation	Project Manager & EAP
Operational Environmental Management Programme (OEMP) for the Kusile Power Station, Mpumalanga	Eskom Holdings	Project Manager & EAP
Review of Basic Assessment Process for the Wittekleibosch Wind Monitoring Mast, Eastern Cape	Exxaro Resources	Project Manager & EAP
Revision of the EMP for the Sirius Solar PV	Aurora Power Solutions	Project Manager & EAP

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
State of the Environment (SoE) for Emalahleni Local Municipality, Mpumalanga	Simo Consulting on behalf of Emalahleni Local Municipality	Project Manager & EAP
Aspects and Impacts Register for Salberg Concrete Products operations	Salberg Concrete Products	EAP
First State of Waste Report for South Africa	Golder on behalf of the Department of Environmental Affairs	Project Manager & EAP
Responsibilities Matrix and Gap Analysis for the Kruisvallei Hydroelectric Power Generation Scheme, Free State Province	Building Energy	Project Manager
Responsibilities Matrix and Gap Analysis for the Roggeveld Wind Farm, Northern & Western Cape Provinces	Building Energy	Project Manager

#### **PROJECTS OUTSIDE OF SOUTH AFRICA**

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Advisory Services for the Zizabona Transmission Project, Zambia, Zimbabwe, Botswana & Namibia	PHD Capital	Advisor
EIA for the Semonkong WEF, Lesotho	MOSCET	Project Manager & EAP
EMP for the Kuvaninga Energia Gas Fired Power Project, Mozambique	ADC (Pty) Ltd	Project Manager & EAP
Environmental Screening Report for the SEF near Thabana Morena, Lesotho	Building Energy	EAP
EPBs for the Kawambwa, Mansa, Mwense and Nchelenge SEFs in Luapula Province, Zambia	Building Energy	Project Manager & EAP
ESG Due Diligence for the Hilton Garden Inn Development in Windhoek, Namibia	Vatange Capital	Project Manager
Mandahill Mall Rooftop PV SEF EPB, Lusaka, Zambia	Building Energy	Project Manager & EAP
Monthly ECO for the PV Power Plant for the Mocuba Power Station	Scatec	Project Manager

## CURRICULUM VITAE OF CHANTELE GEYER

### Comprehensive CV

**Profession :** Junior Environmental Consultant

**Specialisation:** Environmental Management; Project-related GIS mapping; Public Participation Administration; General Geology and Geochemistry.

**Work Experience:** Six (6) months in the environmental field.

### VOCATIONAL EXPERIENCE

Chantelle is a conscientious and ambitious junior Environmental Consultant who holds a BSc(Hons) degree in Environmental Geology. She recently graduated from the North-West University where she consistently stayed in the top 3 of her class. She joined a group of passionate academic peers in her third year to create the first North-West University Geoscience Society to teach young earth scientists about the environment and introduce them to professional mentors, thus bridging the gap between university and a professional career. She was appointed as project manager for this society for two consecutive terms and organized career talks, academic game shows, alumni talks, clean-up initiatives, and numerous team-building events.

She has special interests in geological formations, geochemistry, minerals, contamination studies, rehabilitation and restoration of disturbed areas, as well as hydrology. However, she found her passion for Environmental Management during an environmental internship where she gained experience in:

- Environmental Impact Assessments
- Project-related GIS mapping
- Water use licences
- Public participation processes

Chantelle is a loyal and enthusiastic individual who is dedicated to further her studies in Environmental Management, Environmental Legislation, GIS-mapping, and studies on the renewable energy sector of South Africa. Her goal is to gain knowledge in the processes of Basic Assessments, EIAs, Environmental Compliance, public participation, screening assessments, and environmental authorisation applications. She aims to use this knowledge to strategically consult clients and undertaking projects efficiently and to the highest standard.

## SKILLS BASE AND CORE COMPETENCIES

- Great organisational skills
- Good at time management
- Passionate about the environment
- Compilation of Basic Assessment Reports in compliance with environmental legislation.
- Project management for environmental-related events and projects.
- Water Use Licences
- Aiding with public participation processes.
- Experience with South African environmental legislation.

## EDUCATION AND PROFESSIONAL STATUS

### Degrees:

- BSc Environmental Sciences, North-West University, Potchefstroom (2021)
- BSc Honours Environmental Geology, North-West University, Potchefstroom (2022)

### Short Courses:

- Advanced Microsoft Excel Qualification, Lead Academy (2020)

### Professional Society Affiliations:

- Registered with the International Association for Impact Assessment South Africa (IAIASa)

## EMPLOYMENT

Date	Company	Roles and Responsibilities
July 2022 - Current:	Savannah Environmental (Pty) Ltd	<i>Junior Environmental Consultant</i> <u>Tasks include:</u> <i>Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP); Specialising in project-related GIS mapping. Performing Basic Assessment Reports and Environmental Impact Assessments, Assisting on administrative public participation documents.</i>
September 2021 – November 2021	Prescali Environmental (Pty)	<i>Environmental Intern</i> <u>Tasks included:</u> <i>Liaising with senior management on environmental concerns, Preparing Water Use Licence (WUL) audits, Taking minutes during meetings, Public Participation tasks.</i>

## PROJECT EXPERIENCE

Project experience includes renewable energy projects, grid connection infrastructure, and access roads.

## **RENEWABLE POWER GENERATION PROJECTS: SOLAR ENERGY FACILITIES**

### ***Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes***

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Mutsho Solar PV (4x100MW projects, Limpopo)	Cri-Eagle	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Harmony One Plant Solar PV Facility (30MW), Free State	ENGP	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Harmony Target Solar PV Facility (30MW), Free State	ENGP	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Harmony Joel Solar PV Facility (18MW), Free State	ENGP	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Umbila Emoyeni SEF (150MW), Mpumalanga	Windlab Developments South Africa (Pty) Ltd	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist

### ***Basic Assessments***

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Harmony Central Plant Solar PV Facility (14MW), Free State	ENGP	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Harmony Moab Khotsong Solar PV Facility (100MW), Free State	ENGP	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Highveld Solar PV Facility (240MW), North West	WKN Windcurrent	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Komsberg Solar PV Facility (200MW), Western and Northern Cape	Salika SA	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Klipfontein Solar PV Facility (500MW), Western and Northern Cape	Salika SA	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist

## **RENEWABLE POWER GENERATION PROJECTS: WIND ENERGY FACILITIES**

### ***Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes***

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Umbila Emoyeni WEF (666MW), Mpumalanga	Windlab Developments South Africa (Pty) Ltd	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist

## **GRID INFRASTRUCTURE PROJECTS**

### ***Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes***

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Umbila Emoyeni EGI, Mpumalanga	Windlab Developments South Africa (Pty) Ltd	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist

### ***Basic Assessments***

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Mutsho Solar Grid Connection, Limpopo	Cri-Eagle	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Highveld Grid Connection, North West	WKN Windcurrent	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Komsberg Grid Connection, Western and Northern Cape	Salika SA	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist
Klipfontein Grid Connection, Western and Northern Cape	Salika SA	Junior EAP & GIS Specialist

**INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS (BRIDGES, PIPELINES, ROADS, WATER RESOURCES, STORAGE, ETC)**

**Basic Assessments**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Witberg WEF Access Road, Western Cape	Red Rocket South Africa (Pty) Ltd	Junior EAP and GIS Specialist

## CURRICULUM VITAE OF NICOLENE VENTER

<b>Profession :</b>	Public Participation and Social Consultant
<b>Specialisation:</b>	Public participation process; stakeholder engagement; facilitation (workshops, focus group and public meetings; public open days; steering committees); monitoring and evaluation of public participation and stakeholder engagement processes
<b>Work Experience:</b>	23 years' experience as a Public Participation Practitioner and Stakeholder Consultant

### VOCATIONAL EXPERIENCE

Over the past 23 years Nicolene established herself as an experienced and well recognised public participation practitioner, facilitator and strategic reviewer of public participation processes. She has experience in managing public participation and stakeholder engagement projects and awareness creation programmes. Her experience includes designing and managing countrywide public participation and stakeholder engagement projects and awareness creation projects, managing multi-project schedules, budgets and achieving project goals. She has successfully undertaken several public participation processes for EIA, BA and WULA projects. The EIA and BA process include linear projects such as the NMPP, Eskom Transmission and Distribution power lines as well as site specific developments such as renewable energy projects i.e. solar, photo voltaic and wind farms. She also successfully managed stakeholder engagement projects which were required to be in line with the Equator Principles, locally and in neighbouring countries.

### SKILLS BASE AND CORE COMPETENCIES

- Project Management
- Public Participation, Stakeholder Engagement and Awareness Creation
- Public Speaking and Presentation Skills
- Facilitation (workshops, focus group meetings, public meetings, public open days, working groups and committees)
- Social Assessments (Stakeholder Analysis / Stakeholder Mapping)
- Monitoring and Evaluation of Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagement Processes
- Community Liaison
- IFC Performance Standards
- Equator Principles
- Minute taking, issues mapping, report writing and quality control



## EDUCATION AND PROFESSIONAL STATUS

### Degrees / Diplomas / Certificates:

- Higher Secretarial Certificate, Pretoria Technicon (1970)

### Short Courses:

- Techniques for Effective Public Participation, International Association for Public Participation, IAP2 (2008)
- Foundations of Public Participation (Planning and Communication for Effective Public Participation), IAP2 (2009)
- Certificate in Public Participation – IAP2SA Modules 1, 2 and 3 (2013)

Certificate in Public Relations, Public Relation Institute of South Africa, Damelin Management School (1989)

### Professional Society Affiliations:

- Member of International Association for Public Participation (IAP2): Southern Africa

## EMPLOYMENT

Date	Company	Roles and Responsibilities
November 2018 – current	Savannah Environmental (Pty) Ltd	<p>Public Participation and Social Consultant</p> <p><u>Tasks include:</u></p> <p>Tasks include: Drafting of a Public Participation Plan with key deliverable dates and methodology to be followed, Background Information Document, Letters to Stakeholders and Interested and/or Affected Parties (I&amp;APs) inclusive of key project deliverables and responses to questions / concerns raised; Stakeholder identification; facilitating stakeholder workshops, focus group and public meetings; conduct one-on-one consultation with Community Leaders, Tribal Chiefs, affected landowners, etc.</p> <p>Managing interaction between Stakeholders and Team Members, liaising with National, Provincial and Local Authorities, managing community consultation and communications in project affected areas, attend to the level of technical information communicated to and consultation with all level of stakeholders involved.</p>

Date	Company	Roles and Responsibilities
2016 – October 2018	Imaginative Africa (Pty) Ltd  (Director of Imaginative Africa)	Independent Consultant  Consulting to various Environmental Assessment Practitioners for Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagements:  <u>Tasks include:</u>  Tasks include: Drafting of a Public Participation Plan with key deliverable dates and methodology to be followed, Background Information Document, Letters to Stakeholders and Interested and/or Affected Parties (I&APs) inclusive of key project deliverables and responses to questions / concerns raised; Stakeholder identification; facilitating stakeholder workshops, focus group and public meetings; conduct one-on-one consultation with Community Leaders, Tribal Chiefs, affected landowners, etc.  Managing interaction between Stakeholders and Team Members, liaising with National, Provincial and Local Authorities, managing community consultation and communications in project affected areas, attend to the level of technical information communicated to and consultation with all level of stakeholders involved  <u>Clients:</u>  SiVEST Environmental Savannah Environmental Baagi Environmental Royal Haskoning DHV (previously SSI)
2013 - 2016	Zitholele Consulting  Contact person: Dr Mathys Vosloo  Contact number: 011 207 2060	Senior Public Participation Practitioner and Project Manager  <u>Tasks included:</u>  Project managed public participation process for EIA/BA/WULA/EAL projects. Manages two Public Participation Administrators. Public Participation tasks as outlined as above and including financial management of public participation processes.
2011 - 2013	Imaginative Africa (Pty) Ltd  (company owned by Nicolene Venter)	Independent Consultant  Consulting to various Environmental Assessment Practitioners for Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagements  <u>Tasks included:</u>  Drafting of a Public Participation Plan with key deliverable dates and methodology to be followed, Background Information Document,

		<p>Letters to Stakeholders and Interested and/or Affected Parties (I&amp;APs) inclusive of key project deliverables and responses to questions / concerns raised; Stakeholder identification; facilitating stakeholder workshops, focus group and public meetings; conduct one-on-one consultation with Community Leaders, Tribal Chiefs, affected landowners, etc.</p> <p>Managing interaction between Stakeholders and Team Members, liaising with National, Provincial and Local Authorities, managing community consultation and communications in project affected areas, attend to the level of technical information communicated to and consultation with all level of stakeholders involved</p> <p><u>Clients:</u>          Bohlweki Environmental          Bembani Sustainability (Pty) Ltd          Naledzi Environmental</p>
<b>2007 – 2011</b>	SiVEST SA (Pty) Ltd  Contact person: Andrea Gibb  Contact number: 011 798 0600	Unit Manager: Public Participation Practitioner  <u>Tasks included:</u>  Project managed public participation process for EIA/BA projects. Manages two Junior Public Participation Practitioners. Public Participation tasks as outlined as above and including financial management of public participation processes.
<b>2005 – 2006</b>	Imaginative Africa (Pty) Ltd  (company owned by Nicolene Venter)	Independent Consultant  Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagement Practitioner  <u>Tasks included:</u>  Drafting of a Public Participation Plan with key deliverable dates and methodology to be followed, Background Information Document, Letters to Stakeholders and Interested and/or Affected Parties (I&APs) inclusive of key project deliverables and responses to questions / concerns raised; Stakeholder identification; facilitating stakeholder workshops, focus group and public meetings; conduct one-on-one consultation with Community Leaders, Tribal Chiefs, affected landowners, etc.  Managing interaction between Stakeholders and Team Members, liaising with National, Provincial and Local Authorities, managing community consultation and communications in project affected areas, attend to the level of technical

		<p>information communicated to and consultation with all level of stakeholders involved.</p> <p><u>Clients:</u></p> <p>Manyaka-Greyling-Meiring (previously Greyling Liaison and currently Golder Associates)</p>
<b>1997 - 2004</b>	<p>Imaginative Africa (Pty) Ltd</p> <p>(company owned by Nicolene Venter)</p>	<p>Independent Consultant: Public Participation Practitioner.</p> <p><u>Tasks included:</u></p> <p>Drafting of a Public Participation Plan with key deliverable dates and methodology to be followed, Background Information Document, Letters to Stakeholders and Interested and/or Affected Parties (I&amp;APs) inclusive of key project deliverables and responses to questions / concerns raised; Stakeholder identification; facilitating stakeholder workshops, focus group and public meetings; conduct one-on-one consultation with Community Leaders, affected landowners, etc.</p> <p>Managing interaction between Stakeholders and Team Members, liaising with National, Provincial Local Authorities, managing community consultation and communications in project affected areas, attend to the level of technical information communicated to and consultation with all level of stakeholders involved.</p> <p><u>Clients:</u></p> <p>Greyling Liaison (currently Golder Associates); Bemani Sustainability (Pty) Ltd; Lidwala Environmental; Naledzi Environmental</p>

## PROJECT EXPERIENCE

### RENEWABLE POWER GENERATION PROJECTS

#### PHOTOVOLTAIC SOLAR ENERGY FACILITIES

##### Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes

Project Name & Location	Client Name	Role
Lichtenburg PVs (3 PVs) & Power Lines (grid connection), Lichtenburg, North West Province	Atlantic Energy Partners EAP: Savannah Environmental	Project Manage the Public Participation Process Facilitate all meetings Consultation with Government Officials, Key Stakeholders, Landowners & Community Leaders
Allepad PVs 4 PVs) & Power Lines (grid connection), Upington, Northern Cape Province	IL Energy EAP: Savannah Environmental	
Hyperion Solar PV Developments (4 PVs) and Associated Infrastructures, Kathu, Northern Cape Province	Building Energy EAP: Savannah Environmental	
Aggeneys Solar PV Developments (2 PVs) and Associated Infrastructures, Aggeneys, Northern Cape Province	Atlantic Energy Partners and ABO Wind EAP: Savannah Environmental	
Upilanga Solar Park, Northern Cape (350MW CSP Tower)	Emvelo Capital Projects (Pty) Ltd	
Khunab Solar Development, consisting of Klip Punt PV1, McTaggart PV1, McTaggart PV2, McTaggart PV3 and the Khunab solar Grid Connection near Upington, Northern Cape Province	Atlantic Energy Partners and Abengoa	
Sirius Solar PV3 and PV4, near Upington, Northern Cape Province	Solal	
Geelster PV 1 and PV2 solar energy facilities, near Aggeneys, Northern Cape	ABO Wind	
Naledi PV and Ngwedi PV solar energy facilities, near Upington, Northern Cape	Atlantic Energy Partners and Abengoa	
Kotulo Tsatsi PV1, Kotulo Tsatsi PV3 and Kotulo Tsatsi PV4 solar energy facilities, near Kenhardt, Northern Cape	Kotulo Tsatsi Energy	
Tlitseng PV, including Substations & Power Lines, Lichtenburg, North West Province	BioTherm Energy EAP: SiVEST	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation
Sendawo PVs, including Substations & Power Lines, Vryburg, North West Province		
Helena Solar 1, 2 and 3 PVs, Copperton, Northern Cape Province		
Farm Spes Bona 23552 Solar PV Plants, Bloemfontein, Free State Province	Surya Power EAP: SiVEST	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation
De Aar Solar Energy Facility, De Aar, Northern Cape Province	South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power Developments EAP: SiVEST	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation
Droogfontein Solar Energy Facility, Kimberley, Northern Cape Province		
Kaalspruit Solar Energy Facility, Loeriesfontein, Northern Cape Province		

Platsjambok East PV, Prieska, Northern Cape Province		
Renosterburg PV, De Aar, Northern Cape Province	Renosterberg Wind Energy Company EAP: SiVEST	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation
19MW Solar Power Plant on Farm 198 (Slypklip), Danielskuil, Northern Cape Province	Solar Reserve South Africa EAP: SiVEST	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation

#### **Basic Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Upilanga Solar Park, Northern Cape (x6 100MW PV's and x3 350MW PV Basic Assessments)	Emvelo Capital Projects (Pty) Ltd	Project Manage the Public Participation Process Facilitate all meetings Consultation with Government Officials, Key Stakeholders, Landowners & Community Leaders
Sirius Solar PV Solar Energy Facility, Upington, Northern Cape Province	SOLA Future Energy	
Khunab Solar Development, consisting of Klip Punt PV1, McTaggart PV1, McTaggart PV2, McTaggart PV3 and the Khunab solar Grid Connection near Upington, Northern Cape Province	Atlantic Energy Partners and Abengoa	

#### **WIND ENERGY FACILITIES**

#### **Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Aletta Wind Farm, Copperton, Northern Cape Province	BioTherm Energy EAP: SiVEST	Public Participation
Eureka Wind Farm, Copperton, Northern Cape Province		
Loeriesfontein Wind Farm, Loeriesfontein, Northern Cape Province	South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power Developments EAP: SiVEST	Public Participation
Dr oogfontein Wind Farm, Loeriesfontein, Northern Cape Province		
Four Leeuwberg Wind Farms, Loeriesfontein, Northern Cape Province		
Noupoort Wind Farm, Noupoort, Northern Cape Province		
Mierdam PV & Wind Farm, Prieska, Northern Cape Province		
Platsjambok West Wind Farm & PV, Prieska, Northern Cape Province		

#### **Basic Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Cluster of Renewable Energy Developments, Eastern Cape Province	Wind Relic	

Nama Wind Energy Facility, Northern Cape Province	Genesis ECO EAP: Savannah Environmental	Project Manage the Public Participation Process Facilitate all meetings Consultation with Government Officials, Key Stakeholders, Landowners & Community Leaders
Zonnequa Wind Energy Facility, Northern Cape Province		

## **CONCENTRATED SOLAR FACILITIES (CSP)**

### **Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Upington Concentrating Solar Plant and associated Infrastructures, Northern Cape Province	Eskom Holdings EAP: Bohlweki Environmental	Project Manage the Public Participation Process Facilitate all meetings Consultation with Government Officials, Key Stakeholders, Landowners & Community Leaders

## **CONVENTIONAL POWER GENERATION PROJECTS (GAS)**

### **Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
450MW gas to power project and associated 132kV power line, Richards bay, KwaZulu-Natal	Phinda Power Producers	Project Manage the Public Participation Process Facilitate all meetings Consultation with Government Officials, Key Stakeholders & Landowners
4000MW gas to power project and associated 400kV power lines, Richards bay, KwaZulu-Natal	Phinda Power Producers	
Richards Bay Gas to Power Combined Cycle Power Station, KwaZulu-Natal	Eskom Holdings SoC Limited	

## **GRID INFRASTRUCTURE PROJECTS**

### **Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
132/11kV Olifantshoek Substation and Power Line, Northern Cape	Eskom	Project Manage the Public Participation Process Facilitate all meetings Consultation with Government Officials, Key Stakeholders, Landowners & Community Leaders
Grid connection infrastructure for the Namas Wind Farm, Northern Cape Province	Genesis Namas Wind (Pty) Ltd	
Grid connection infrastructure for the Zonnequa Wind Farm, Northern Cape Province	Genesis Zonnequa Wind (Pty) Ltd	
Khunab Solar Grid Connection, near Upington, Northern Cape Province	Atlantic Energy Partners and Abengoa	
Pluto-Mahikeng Main Transmission Substation and 400kV Power Line (Carletonville to Mahikeng), Gauteng and North West Provinces	Eskom Holdings EAP: Baagi Environmental	
Thyspunt Transmission Lines Integration Project, Eastern Cape Province	Eskom Holdings EAP: SIVEST	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation
Westrand Strengthening Project, Gauteng Province		Public Participation,



Mookodi Integration Project, North-West Province		
Transnet Coallink, Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal Provinces		
Delarey-Kopela-Phahameng Distribution power line and newly proposed Substations, North-West Province	Eskom Holding EAP: Bemani Environmental	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation
Invubu-Theta 400kV Eskom Transmission Power Line, KwaZulu-Natal Province		
Melkhout-Kudu-Grassridge 132kV Power Line Project (project not submitted to DEA), Eastern Cape Province	Eskom Holdings EAP: SIVEST	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation
Tweespruit-Welroux-Driedorp-Wepener 132Kv Power Line, Free State Province		
Kuruman 132Kv Power Line Upgrade, Northern Cape Province	Eskom Holdings EAP: Zitholele	
Vaalbank 132Kv Power Line, Free State Province		
Pongola-Candover-Golela 132kV Power Line (Impact Phase), KwaZulu-Natal Province		

## **PART 2 AMENDMENTS**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Transalloys Coal-Fired Power Station near Emalahleni, Mpumalanga Province	Transalloys (Pty) Ltd	Project Manage the Public Participation Process
Zen Wind Energy Facility, Western Cape	Energy Team (Pty) Ltd	
Hartebeest Wind Energy Facility, Western Cape	juwi Renewable Energies (Pty) Ltd	
Khai-Ma and Korana Wind Energy Facilities	Mainstream Renewable Power (Pty) Ltd	

## **FACILITATION**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Meeting Type</b>
Bloemfontein Strengthening Project, Free State Province	Eskom Holdings EAP: Baagi Environmental	Public Meetings
Mooiaraai-Smitkloof 132kV Power Line and Substation, Northern Cape Province	Eskom Holdings EAP: SSI	Focus Group Meetings
Aggeneis-Oranjemond 400kV Eskom Transmission Power Line, Northern Cape Province	Eskom Holdings EAP: Savannah Environmental	Focus Group Meetings & Public Meetings
Ariadne-Eros 400kV/132kV Multi-Circuit Transmission Power Line (Public Meetings)	Eskom Holdings EAP: ACER Africa	Public Meetings
Majuba-Venus 765kV Transmission Power Lines, Mpumalanga Province		
Thabametsi IPP Power Station, Limpopo Province	Thabametsi Power Company EAP: Savannah Environmental	Focus Group Meeting & Public Meeting
Aggeneis-Oranjemond Transmission Line & Substation Upgrade, Northern Cape	Eskom Transmission	Focus Group Meetings & Public Meetings

## **SCREENING STUDIES**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Potential Power Line Alternatives from Humansdorp to Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape Province	Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality EAP: SiVEST	Social Assessment

## **ASH DISPOSAL FACILITIES**

### **Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Programmes**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Medupi Flue Gas Desulphurisation Project (up to completion of Scoping Phase), Limpopo Province	Eskom Holdings SOC Ltd EAP: Zitholele Consulting	Public Participation, Landowner and Community Consultation
Kendal 30-year Ash Disposal Facility, Mpumalanga Province		
Kusile 60-year Ash Disposal Facility, Mpumalanga Province		
Camden Power Station Ash Disposal Facility, Mpumalanga Province		
Tutuka Fabric Filter Retrofit and Dust Handling Plant Projects, Mpumalanga Province	Eskom Holdings SOC Ltd EAP: Lidwala Environmental	
Eskom's Majuba and Tutuka Ash Dump Expansion, Mpumalanga Province		
Hendrina Ash Dam Expansion, Mpumalanga Province		

## **INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS (BRIDGES, PIPELINES, ROADS, WATER RESOURCES, STORAGE, ETC)**

### **Basic Assessments**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Expansion of LOX and Diesel Storage at the Air Products Facility in Coega, Eastern Cape	Air Products South Africa (Pty) Ltd	Project Manage the Public Participation Process Facilitate all meetings Consultation with Government Officials, Key Stakeholders & Landowners
Transnet's New Multi-Products Pipeline traversing Kwa-Zulu Natal, Free State and Gauteng Provinces	Transnet EAP: Bohlweke Environmental	
Realignment of the Bulshoek Dam Weir near Klawer and the Doring River Weir near Clanwilliam, Western Cape Province	Dept of Water and Sanitation EAP: Zitholele	Public Participation

## **STAKEHOLDER ENGAGEMENT**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Socio-Economic Impact Study for the shutdown and repurposing of Eskom Power Stations: Komati Power Station, Hendrina Power Station & Grootvlei Power Station	Urban-Econ	Project Management for the stakeholder engagement with Community

		Representatives in the primary data capture area
First State of Waste Report for South Africa	Golder Associates on behalf of the Department of Environmental Affairs	Secretarial Services
Determination, Review and Implementation of the Reserve in the Olifants/Letaba System	Golder Associates on behalf of the Department of Water and Sanitation	
Orange River Bulk Water Supply System		
Levuvu-Letaba Resources Quality Objectives		

## **FACILITATION**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Meeting Type</b>
Determination, Review and Implementation of the Reserve in the Olifants/Letaba System	Department of Water and Sanitation	Secretarial Services
Orange River Bulk Water Supply System	Golder Associates	Secretarial Services
Levuvu-Letaba Resources Quality Objectives		Secretarial Services
SmancorCR Chemical Plant (Public Meeting), Gauteng Province	Samancor Chrome (Pty) Ltd EAP: Environmental Science Associates	Public Meeting
SANRAL N4 Toll Highway Project (2 <sup>nd</sup> Phase), Gauteng & North West Provinces	Department of Transport EAP: Bohlweki Environmental	Public Meetings

## **MINING SECTOR**

### **Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Programme**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Zero Waste Recovery Plant at highveld Steel, Mpumalanga Province	Anglo African Metals EAP: Savannah Environmental	Public Participation
Koffiefontein Slimes Dam, Free State Province	Petra Diamond Mines EAP: Zitholele	Public Participation
Baobab Project: Ethenol Plant, Chimbanje, Middle Sabie, Zimbabwe	Applicant: Green Fuel EAP: SiVEST	Public Participation & Community Consultation
BHP Billiton Energy Coal SA's Middelburg Water Treatment Plant, Mpumalanga	BHP Billiton Group EAP: Jones & Wagener	Public Participation

## **ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION AMENDMENTS**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Transalloys Coal-Fired Power Station near Emalahleni, Mpumalanga Province	Transalloys (Pty) Ltd	Public Participation
Zen Wind Energy Facility, Western Cape	Energy Team (Pty) Ltd	
Hartebeest Wind Energy Facility, Western Cape	juwi Renewable Energies (Pty) Ltd	
Khai-Ma and Korana Wind Energy Facilities	Mainstream Renewable Power (Pty) Ltd	
Beaufort West 280MW Wind Farm into two 140MW Trakas and Beaufort West Wind Farms, Western Cape	South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power Developments EAP: SiVEST	

## **SECTION 54 AUDITS**

<b>Project Name &amp; Location</b>	<b>Client Name</b>	<b>Role</b>
Mulilo 20MW PV Facility, Prieska, Northern Cape	Mulilo (Pty) Ltd	Public Participation: I&AP Notification process
Mulilo 10MW PV Facility, De Aar, Northern Cape	Mulilo (Pty) Ltd	
Karoshhoek CSP 1 Facility/ Solar One, Upington, Northern Cape	Karoshhoek Solar One (Pty) Ltd	

**APPENDIX B:**  
**GRIEVANCE MECHANISM FOR COMPLAINTS AND ISSUES**

## GRIEVANCE MECHANISM / PROCESS

---

### 1. PURPOSE

This Grievance Mechanism has been developed to receive and facilitate the resolution of concerns and grievances regarding the project's environmental and social performance. The aim of the Grievance Mechanism is to ensure that grievances or concerns raised by stakeholders are addressed in a manner that:

- » Provides a predictable, accessible, transparent, and credible process to all parties, resulting in outcomes that are fair and equitable, accountable and efficient.
- » Promotes trust as an integral component of broader community relations activities.
- » Enables more systematic identification of emerging issues and trends, facilitating corrective action and pre-emptive engagement.

The aim of this Grievance Mechanism is to provide a process to address grievances in a manner that does not require a potentially costly and time-consuming legal process.

### 2. PROCEDURE FOR RECEIVING AND RESOLVING GRIEVANCES

The following proposed grievance procedures are to be complied with throughout the construction, operation and decommissioning phases of the project. These procedures should be updated as and when required to ensure that the Grievance Mechanism is relevant for the project and effective in providing the required processes.

- » Local landowners, communities and authorities must be informed in writing by the Developer of the grievance mechanism and the process by which grievances can be brought to the attention of the Developer through its designated representative. This must be undertaken with the commencement of the construction phase.
- » A company representative must be appointed as the contact person to which grievances can be directed. The name and contact details of the contact person must be provided to local landowners, communities and authorities when requested.
- » Project related grievances relating to the construction, operation and or decommissioning phases must be addressed in writing to the contact person. The contact person should assist local landowners and/or communities who may lack resources to submit/prepare written grievances, by recording grievances and completing written grievance notices where applicable, translating requests or concerns or by facilitating contact with relevant parties who can address the raised concerns. The following information should be obtained, as far as possible, regarding each written grievance, which may act as both acknowledgement of receipt as well as record of grievance received:
  - a. The name and contact details of the complainant;
  - b. The nature of the grievance;
  - c. Date raised, received, and for which the meeting was arranged;
  - d. Persons elected to attend the meeting (which will depend on the grievance); and
  - e. A clear statement that the grievance procedure is, in itself, not a legal process. Should such avenues be desired, they must be conducted in a separate process and do not form part of this grievance mechanism.

- » The grievance must be registered with the contact person who, within 2 working days of receipt of the grievance, must contact the Complainant to discuss the grievance and, if required, agree on a suitable date and venue for a meeting in order to discuss the grievances raised. Unless otherwise agreed, the meeting should be held within 2 weeks of receipt of the grievance.
- » The contact person must draft a letter to be sent to the Complainant acknowledging receipt of the grievance, the name and contact details of Complainant, the nature of the grievance, the date that the grievance was raised, and the date and venue for the meeting (once agreed and only if required).
- » A grievance register must be kept on site (in electronic format, so as to facilitate editing and updating), and shall be made available to all parties wishing to gain access thereto.
- » Prior to the meeting being held the contact person must contact the Complainant to discuss and agree on the parties who should attend the meeting, as well as a suitable venue. The people who will be required to attend the meeting will depend on the nature of the grievance. While the Complainant and or Developer are entitled to invite their legal representatives to attend the meeting/s, it should be made clear to all the parties involved in the process that the grievance mechanism process is not a legal process, and that if the Complainant invites legal representatives, the cost will be their responsibility. It is therefore recommended that the involvement of legal representatives be limited as far as possible, as a matter of last resort, and that this process be primarily aimed at stakeholder relationship management as opposed to an arbitration or litigation mechanism.
- » The meeting should be chaired by the Developer's representative appointed to address grievances. The Developer must supply and nominate a representative to capture minutes and record the meeting/s.
- » Draft copies of the minutes must be made available to the Complainant and the Developer within 5 working days of the meeting being held. Unless otherwise agreed, comments on the Draft Minutes must be forwarded to the company representative appointed to manage the grievance mechanism within 5 working days of receipt of the draft minutes.
- » The meeting agenda must be primarily the discussion of the grievance, avoidance and mitigation measures available and proposed by all parties, as well as a clear indication of the future actions and responsibilities, in order to put into effect the proposed measures and interventions to successfully resolve the grievance.
- » In the event of the grievance being resolved to the satisfaction of all the parties concerned, the outcome must be recorded and signed off by the relevant parties. The record should provide details of the date of the meeting/s, the names of the people that attended the meeting/s, the outcome of the meeting/s, and where relevant, the measures identified to address the grievance, the party responsible for implementing the required measures, and the agreed upon timeframes for the measures to be implemented.
- » In the event of a dispute between the Complainant and the Developer regarding the grievance, the option of appointing an independent mediator to assist with resolving the issue should be discussed. The record of the meeting/s must note that a dispute has arisen and that the grievance has not been resolved to the satisfaction of all the parties concerned.
- » In the event that the parties agree to appoint a mediator, the Developer will be required to identify three (3) mediators and forward the names and CVs to the Complainant within 2 weeks of the dispute being declared. The Complainant, in consultation with the Developer, must identify the preferred mediator and agree on a date for the next meeting. The cost of the mediator must be borne by the Developer. The Developer must supply and nominate a representative to capture minutes and record the meeting/s.



- » In the event of the grievance, with the assistance of the mediator, being resolved to the satisfaction of all the parties concerned, the outcome must be recorded and signed off by the relevant parties, including the mediator. The record should provide details on the date of the meeting/s, the names of the people that attended the meeting/s, the outcome of the meeting/s, and where relevant, the measures identified to address the grievance, the party responsible for implementing the required measures, and the agreed upon timeframes for the measures to be implemented.
- » In the event of the dispute not being resolved, the mediator must prepare a draft report that summaries the nature of the grievance and the dispute. The report should include a recommendation by the mediator on the proposed way forward with regard to the addressing the grievance.
- » The draft report must be made available to the Complainant and the Developer for comment before being finalised and signed by all parties, which signature may not be unreasonably withheld by either party. Unless otherwise agreed, comments on the draft report must be forwarded to the company representative appointed to manage the grievance mechanism within 5 working days. The way forward will be informed by the recommendations of the mediator and the nature of the grievance.

A Complaint is closed out when no further action is required, or indeed possible. Closure status must be classified and captured following mediation or successful resolution in the Complaints Register as follows:

- » Resolved. Complaints where a resolution has been agreed and implemented and the Complainant has signed the Confirmation Form.
- » Unresolved. Complaints where it has not been possible to reach an agreed resolution despite mediation.
- » Abandoned. Complaints where the Complainant is not contactable after one month following receipt of a Complaint and efforts to trace his or her whereabouts have been unsuccessful.

The grievance mechanism does not replace the right of an individual, community, group or organization to take legal action should they so wish. In the event of the grievance not being resolved to the satisfaction of Complainant and or the Developer, either party may be entitled to legal action if an appropriate option, however, these grievance mechanisms aim to avoid such interactions by addressing the grievances within a short timeframe, and to mutual satisfaction, where possible.

**APPENDIX C:**  
**OPEN SPACE MANAGEMENT PLAN**

# ALIEN PLANT AND OPEN SPACE MANAGEMENT PLAN

---

## 1. PURPOSE

Invasive alien plant species pose the second largest threat to biodiversity after direct habitat destruction. The purpose of this Alien Plant and Open Space Management Plan is to provide a framework for the management of alien and invasive plant species during the construction and operation of Mutsho Solar PV4. The broad objectives of the plan include the following:

- » Ensure alien plants do not become dominant in parts of the site, or the whole site, through the control and management of alien and invasive species presence, dispersal and encroachment.
- » Develop and implement a monitoring and eradication programme for alien and invasive plant species.
- » Promote the natural re-establishment and planting of indigenous species in order to retard erosion and alien plant invasion.

This plan should be updated throughout the life-cycle of the project, as required in order to ensure that appropriate measures are in place to manage and control the establishment of alien and invasive plant species and to ensure compliance with relevant legislation. This plan should be implemented with specific focus on sensitive areas.

## 2. LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT

### ***Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983)***

In terms of the amendments to the regulations under the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983), all declared alien plant species must be effectively controlled. Landowners are legally responsible for the control of invasive alien plants on their properties. In terms of this Act alien invasive plant species are ascribed to one of the following categories:

- » Category 1: Prohibited and must be controlled.
- » Category 2 (commercially used plants): May be grown in demarcated areas provided that there is a permit and that steps are taken to prevent their spread.
- » Category 3 (ornamentally used plants): May no longer be planted. Existing plants may be retained as long as all reasonable steps are taken to prevent the spreading thereof, except within the flood line of watercourses and wetlands.

### ***National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No.10 of 2004)***

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEM:BA) regulates all invasive organisms in South Africa, including a wide range of fauna and flora. Regulations have been published in Government Notices R.506, R.507, R.508 and R.509 of 2013 under NEM:BA. According to this Act and the regulations, any species designated under Section 70 cannot be propagated, grown, bought or sold without a permit. Below is an explanation of the three categories:

- » **Category 1a:** Invasive species requiring compulsory control. Any specimens of Category 1a listed species need, by law, to be eradicated from the environment. No permits will be issued.

- » **Category 1b:** Invasive species requiring compulsory control as part of an invasive species control programme. Remove and destroy. These plants are deemed to have such a high invasive potential that infestations can qualify to be placed under a government sponsored invasive species management programme. No permits will be issued.
- » **Category 2:** Invasive species regulated by area. A demarcation permit is required to import, possess, grow, breed, move, sell, buy or accept as a gift any plants listed as Category 2 plants. No permits will be issued for Category 2 plants to exist in riparian zones.
- » **Category 3:** Invasive species regulated by activity. An individual plant permit is required to undertake any of the following restricted activities (import, possess, grow, breed, move, sell, buy or accept as a gift) involving a Category 3 species. No permits will be issued for Category 3 plants to exist in riparian zones.

Plants listed under the categories above are detailed within the Alien and Invasive Species published in GNR1003 of 18 September 2020. The following guide is a useful starting point for the identification of alien species: Bromilow, C. 2010. Problem Plants and Alien Weeds of South Africa. Briza, Pretoria.

It is important to note that alien plant species that are regulated in terms of the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act 43 of 1983) (CARA) as weeds and invader plants are exempted from NEM:BA. This implies that the provisions of the CARA in respect of listed weed and invader plants supersede those of NEM: BA.

### **3. ALIEN PLANT MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES**

#### **3.1. Prevention and early eradication**

A prevention strategy should be considered and established, including regular surveys and monitoring for invasive alien plants, effective rehabilitation of disturbed areas and prevention of unnecessary disturbance of natural areas.

Monitoring plans should be developed which are designed to identify Invasive Alien Plant Species already on site, as well as those that are introduced to the site by the construction activities. Keeping up to date on which weeds are an immediate threat to the site is important, but efforts should be planned to update this information on a regular basis. When additional Invasive Alien Plant Species are recorded on site, an immediate response of locating the site for future monitoring and either hand-pulling the weeds or an application of a suitable herbicide (where permissible only) should be planned. It is, however, better to monitor regularly and act swiftly than to allow invasive alien plants to become established on site.

#### **3.2. Containment and control**

If any alien invasive plants are found to become established on site, action plans for their control should be developed, depending on the size of the infestations, budgets, manpower considerations and time. Separate plans of control actions should be developed for each location and/or each species. Appropriate registered chemicals and other possible control agents should be considered in the action plans for each site/species. The uses of chemicals are not recommended for any wetland areas. Herbicides should be applied directly to the plant and not to the soil. The key is to ensure that no invasions get out of control. Effective containment and control will ensure that the least amount of energy and resources are required to maintain this status over the long-term. This will also be an indicator that natural systems are impacted to the smallest degree possible.

### **3.3. General Clearing and Guiding Principles**

Alien species control programmes are long-term management projects and should consist of a clearing plan which includes follow up actions for rehabilitation of the cleared area. The lighter infested areas should be cleared first to prevent the build-up of seed banks. Pre-existing dense mature stands ideally should be left for last, as they probably won't increase in density or pose a greater threat than they are currently. Collective management and planning with neighbours may be required in the case of large woody invaders as seeds of alien species are easily dispersed across boundaries by wind or watercourses. All clearing actions should be monitored and documented to keep records of which areas are due for follow-up clearing.

#### **i. Clearing Methods**

Different species require different clearing methods such as manual, chemical or biological methods or a combination of both. Care should however be taken that the clearing methods used do not encourage further invasion and that they are appropriate to the specific species of concern. As such, regardless of the methods used, disturbance to the soil should be kept to a minimum.

Fire should not be used for alien species control or vegetation management at the site. The best-practice clearing method for each species identified should be used.

#### **» Mechanical control**

This entails damaging or removing the plant by physical action. Different techniques could be used, e.g. uprooting, felling, slashing, mowing, ringbarking or bark stripping. This control option is only really feasible in sparse infestations or on a small scale, and for controlling species that do not coppice after cutting. Species that tend to coppice, need to have the cut stumps or coppice growth treated with herbicides following the mechanical treatment. Mechanical control is labour intensive and therefore expensive, and could cause severe soil disturbance and erosion.

#### **» Chemical Control**

Although it is usually preferable to use manual clearing methods where possible, such methods may create additional disturbance which stimulates alien plant invasion and may also be ineffective for many woody species which re-sprout. Where herbicides are to be used, the impact of the operation on the natural environment should be minimised by observing the following:

- \* Area contamination must be minimised by careful, accurate application with a minimum amount of herbicide to achieve good control.
- \* All care must be taken to prevent contamination of any water bodies. This includes due care in storage, application, cleaning equipment and disposal of containers, product and spray mixtures.
- \* Equipment should be washed where there is no danger of contaminating water sources and washings carefully disposed of at a suitable site.
- \* To avoid damage to indigenous or other desirable vegetation, products should be selected that will have the least effect on non-target vegetation.
- \* Coarse droplet nozzles should be fitted to avoid drift onto neighbouring vegetation.
- \* The appropriate health and safety procedures should also be followed regarding the storage, handling and disposal of herbicides.
- \* The use of chemicals is not recommended for wetland areas.

For all herbicide applications, the following Regulations and guidelines should be followed:

- \* Working for Water: Policy on the Use of Herbicides for the Control of Alien Vegetation.
- \* Pesticide Management Policy for South Africa published in terms of the Fertilizers, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act, 1947 (Act No. 36 of 1947) – GNR 1120 of 2010.
- \* South African Bureau of Standards, Standard SANS 10206 (2010).

According to Government Notice No. 13424 dated 26 July 1992, it is an offence to “*acquire, dispose, sell or use an agricultural or stock remedy for a purpose or in a manner other than that specified on the label on a container thereof or on such a container*”.

Contractors using herbicides need to have a valid Pest Control Operators License (limited weeds controller) according to the Fertilizer, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act (Act No. 36 of 1947). This is regulated by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.

» **Biological control**

Biological weed control consists of the use of natural enemies to reduce the vigour or reproductive potential of an invasive alien plant. Biological control agents include insects, mites, and micro-organisms such as fungi or bacteria. They usually attack specific parts of the plant, either the reproductive organs directly (flower buds, flowers or fruit) or the seeds after they have dropped. The stress caused by the biological control agent may kill a plant outright or it might impact on the plant's reproductive capacity. In certain instances, the reproductive capacity is reduced to zero and the population is effectively sterilised. All of these outcomes will help to reduce the spread of the species.

To obtain biocontrol agents, provincial representatives of the Working for Water Programme or the Directorate: Land Use and Soil Management (LUSM), Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) can be contacted.

### **3.4. General management practices**

The following general management practices should be encouraged or strived for:

- » Establish an on-going monitoring programme for the construction phase to detect and quantify any alien species that may become established.
- » Alien vegetation regrowth on areas disturbed by construction must be immediately controlled.
- » Care must be taken to avoid the introduction of alien invasive plant species to the site. Particular attention must be paid to imported material such as building sand or dirty earth-moving equipment. Stockpiles should be checked regularly and any weeds emerging from material stockpiles should be removed.
- » Cleared areas that have become invaded by alien species can be sprayed with appropriate herbicides provided that these herbicides break down on contact with the soil. Residual herbicides should not be used.
- » The effectiveness of vegetation control varies seasonally and this is also likely to impact alien species. Control early in the wet season will allow species to re-grow, and follow-up control is likely to be required. It is tempting to leave control until late in the wet season to avoid follow-up control. However, this may allow alien species to set seed before control, and hence will not contribute towards reducing alien species abundance. Therefore, vegetation control should be aimed at the

middle of the wet season, with a follow-up event towards the end of the wet season. There are no exact dates that can be specified here as each season is unique and management must therefore respond according to the state and progression of the vegetation.

- » Alien plant management is an iterative process and it may require repeated control efforts to significantly reduce the abundance of a species. This is often due to the presence of large and persistent seed banks. However, repeated control usually results in rapid decline once seed banks become depleted.
- » Some alien species are best individually pulled by hand. Regular vegetation control to reduce plant biomass within the site should be conducted. This should be timed so as to coincide with the critical growth phases of the most important alien species on site. This will significantly reduce the cost of alien plant management as this should contribute towards the control of the dominant alien species and additional targeted control will be required only for a limited number of species.
- » No alien species should be cultivated on-site. If vegetation is required for aesthetic purposes, then non-invasive, water-wise locally-occurring species should be used.
- » During operation, surveys for alien species should be conducted regularly. It is recommended that this be undertaken every 6 months for the first two years after construction and annually thereafter. All alien plants identified should be cleared using appropriate means.

### 3.5. Monitoring

In order to assess the impact of clearing activities, rehabilitation efforts, follow-ups and monitoring must be undertaken. This section provides a description of a possible monitoring programme that will provide an assessment of the magnitude of alien plant invasion on site, as well as an assessment of the efficacy of the management programme.

In general, the following principles apply for monitoring:

- » Photographic records must be kept of areas to be cleared prior to work starting and at regular intervals during initial clearing activities. Similarly, photographic records should be kept of the area from immediately before and after follow-up clearing activities. Rehabilitation processes must also be recorded.
- » Simple records must be kept of daily operations, e.g. area/location cleared, labour units and, if ever used, the amount of herbicide used.
- » It is important that, if monitoring results in detection of invasive alien plants, that this leads to immediate action.

The following monitoring should be implemented to ensure management of alien invasive plant species.

#### **Construction Phase**

Monitoring Action	Indicator	Timeframe
Document alien species present at the site	List of alien plant species	Preconstruction Monthly during Summer and Autumn (Middle November to end of March) 3 Monthly during Winter and Spring
Document alien plant distribution	Alien plant distribution map within priority areas	3 Monthly
Document & record alien plant control measures implemented	Record of clearing activities	3 Monthly



### **Operation Phase**

<b>Monitoring Action</b>	<b>Indicator</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>
Document alien plant species distribution and abundance over time at the site	Alien plant distribution map	Biannually
Document alien plant control measures implemented & success rate achieved	Records of control measures and their success rate. A decline in alien distribution and cover over time at the site	Biannually
Document rehabilitation measures implemented and success achieved in problem areas	Decline in vulnerable bare areas over time	Biannually

**APPENDIX D:**  
**RE-VEGETATION AND HABITAT REHABILITATION PLAN**

# REVEGETATION AND REHABILITATION PLAN

---

## 1. PURPOSE

The purpose of the Rehabilitation Plan is to ensure that areas cleared or impacted during construction activities within the site for the solar energy facility, and that are not required for operation are rehabilitated to their original state before the operation phase commences, and that the risk of erosion from these areas is reduced. The purpose of the Rehabilitation Plan for the site can be summarised as follows:

- » Achieve long-term stabilisation of all disturbed areas.
- » Re-vegetate all disturbed areas with suitable local plant species.
- » Minimise visual impact of disturbed areas.
- » Ensure that disturbed areas are rehabilitated to a condition similar to that found prior to disturbance.

This Rehabilitation Plan should be read in conjunction with other site-specific plans, including the Erosion Management Plan, Soil Management Plan, Alien Invasive Management Plan and Plant Rescue and Protection Plan. Prior to the commencement of construction, a detailed Rehabilitation Plan and Method Statement for the site should be compiled with the aid of a suitably qualified, professionally registered specialist (with a botanical or equivalent qualification).

## 2. RELEVANT ASPECTS OF THE SITE

Four habitat units were identified during the assessment and included closed woodland, a rocky area, watercourses, and mopane bushveld. The sensitivity of these habitats ranged from high to medium with the closed woodland, rocky area and watercourses regarded as high sensitivity due to the species recorded and the role of this intact unique habitat to biodiversity, whilst the mopane bushveld is regarded as having a medium sensitivity.

A total of 72 plant species were found within the project/study area, which consisted of 67 native, 0 Red List, 4 protected, 0 SA endemic, 0 alien, and 1 NEM:BA listed invasive species.

A total of 13 mammal, 0 amphibian, and 3 reptile species were recorded within the project/study area. No amphibian or reptile SCC were recorded within the study area; and no mammal SoCC were recorded, namely. It was determined that the development will not detrimentally impact these populations as no faunal SCC were recorded within the project/study area.

During the field assessment 3 species of protected trees were observed: *Boscia albitrunca* (Shepard's tree), *Adansonia digitata* (Baobab), and *Sclerocarya birrea subsp. caffra* (Marula). It is of vital importance that a search a rescue along with permit applications be done prior to the commencement of the development. The density of the trees is regarded a very high especially in the case of *B. albitrunca*.

## 3. REHABILITATION METHODS AND PRACTISES

The following general management practices should be encouraged or strived for:

- » The footprint should be limited much as possible through reducing the excess footprint around roads, PV panel footings etc as much as possible.
- » Topsoil should be reserved wherever possible on site, to be utilised during rehabilitation.
- » Clearing of invaded areas should be conducted as per the Alien Management Plan, included in the EMPr.
- » No harvesting of vegetation may be undertaken outside the area to be disturbed by construction activities.
- » It is important to select the correct species to use for rehabilitation. There are several succulents that dominate the vegetation of the area, and these should be the main species that should be used in rehabilitation.
- » Indigenous plant material must be kept separate from alien material.
- » Re-seeding with collected or commercial indigenous seed mixes is recommended. Indigenous seeds may be harvested for purposes of revegetation in areas that are free of alien invasive vegetation, either at the site prior to clearance or from suitable neighbouring sites.
- » Sods used for revegetation should be obtained directly from the site, but not from the sensitive areas. Sods should contain at least a 50 mm topsoil layer and be minimally disturbed, in particular to existing root systems. Sods must ideally be obtained from areas as close as possible to the region that is to be rehabilitated.
- » Water used for the irrigation of re-vegetated areas should be free of chlorine and other pollutants that might have a detrimental effect on the plants.
- » All seeded, planted or sodded grass areas and all shrubs or trees planted are to be irrigated at regular intervals.
- » On steep slopes and areas where seed and organic matter retention is low, it is recommended that soil savers are used to stabilise the soil surface. Soil savers are man-made materials, usually constructed of organic material such as hemp or jute and are usually applied in areas where traditional rehabilitation techniques are not likely to succeed.
- » In areas where soil saver is used, it should be pegged down to ensure that it captures soil and organic matter flowing over the surface.
- » The final rehabilitated area should resemble the current composition and structure of the soil as far as practicably possible.
- » Progressive rehabilitation is an important element of the rehabilitation strategy and should be implemented where feasible.
- » No construction equipment, vehicles or unauthorised personnel should be allowed onto areas that have been rehabilitated.
- » Where rehabilitation sites are located within actively grazed areas, they should be fenced off, this must be undertaken in consultation with the landowner.
- » Any runnels, erosion channels or wash-aways developing after revegetation should be backfilled and consolidated and the areas restored to a proper stable condition.
- » Re-vegetated areas should be monitored frequently and prepared and revegetation from scratch should inadequate signs of surface coverage or grown be evident after two growth seasons. Adequate recovery must be assessed by a qualified botanist or rehabilitation specialist.
- » The stockpiled vegetation from the clearing operations should be reduced to mulch where possible, and retained along with topsoil to encourage seedbank regrowth and soil fertility.
- » Mulches must be collected in such a manner as to restrict the loss of seed.
- » Mulch must be stored for as short a period as possible.
- » Mulch is to be harvested from areas that are to be denuded of vegetation during construction activities, provided that they are free of seed-bearing alien invasive plants.

- » Where herbicides are used to clear vegetation, species-specific chemicals should be applied to individual plants only. General spraying should be strictly prohibited, and only the correct herbicide type should be applied.
- » Once rehabilitated, areas should be protected to prevent trampling and erosion.
- » Fencing should be removed once a sound vegetative cover has been achieved.

#### **4. MONITORING AND FOLLOW-UP ACTION**

Throughout the lifecycle of the development, regular monitoring and adaptive management must be in place to detect any new degradation of rehabilitated areas. During the construction phase, the Environmental Officer (EO) and EPC Contractor will be responsible for initiating and maintaining a suitable monitoring system. Once the development is operational, the Developer will need to identify a suitable entity that will be able to take over and maintain the monitoring cycle and initiate adaptive management as soon as it is required. Monitoring personnel must be adequately trained.

The following are the minimum criteria that should be monitored:

- » Associated nature and stability of surface soils.
- » Re-emergence of alien and invasive plant species. If noted, remedial action must be taken immediately, as per the alien management plan and mitigation measures contained within the EMPr.

Rehabilitation success, monitoring and follow-up actions are important to achieve the desired cover and soil protection. The following monitoring protocol is recommended:

- » Rehabilitation areas should be monitored every 4 months for the first 12 months following construction, or as per the recommendations of specialist.
- » Ensure that steep slopes are not de-vegetated unnecessarily and subsequently become hydrophobic (i.e. have increased runoff and a decreased infiltration rate) increasing the erosion potential.
- » Soil loss is related to the length of time that soils are exposed prior to rehabilitation or stabilisation. Therefore, the timeframe between construction activities and rehabilitation should be minimised. Phased construction and progressive rehabilitation, where practically possible, are therefore important elements of the erosion control and rehabilitation strategy.
- » Any areas showing erosion, should be adaptively managed with particular erosion control measures, depending on the situation.

If the current state of the environment prior to construction (which will be disturbed during the construction phase) is not achieved post impact, within the specified rehabilitation period, maintenance of these areas must continue until an acceptable state is achieved (excluding alien plant species or weeds). Additional rehabilitation methods may be necessary to achieve the current state before construction commenced.

Monitoring of the rehabilitation success, as well as follow-up adaptive management, combined with the clearing of emerging alien plant species should all continue for as long as is considered necessary, depending on regrowth rates.

**APPENDIX E:**  
**PLANT RESCUE AND PROTECTION PLAN**

## SEARCH AND RESCUE AND PROTECTION PLAN

### 1. PURPOSE

The purpose of the Search and Rescue and Protection Plan is to implement avoidance and mitigation measures, in addition to the mitigations included in the EMPr to reduce the impact of the solar energy facility's establishment on listed and protected plant species and their habitats during construction and operation. This subplan is required in order to ensure compliance with national and provincial legislation for vegetation clearing and any required destruction or translocation of provincially and nationally protected species within the development footprint.

The Plan first provides some legislative background on the regulations relevant to listed and protected species, under the TOPS, The Limpopo Nature Conservation Act, No. 10 of 1998 and National List of Protected Tree Species. This is followed by an identification of protected species present within the development area and actions that should be implemented to minimise impact on these species and comply with legislative requirements.

### 2. IDENTIFICATION OF SPECIES OF CONSERVATION CONCERN

Plant species are protected at the national level as well as the provincial level and different permits may be required for different species depending on their protection level. At the national level, protected trees are listed by the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment (DFFE) under the National List of Protected Trees, which is updated on a regular basis. Any clearing of nationally protected trees requires a permit from DFFE. At the provincial level, all species red-listed under the Red List of South African plants (<http://redlist.sanbi.org/>) as well as species listed under the Mpumalanga Nature Conservation Act, No. 10 of 1998 protected and require provincial permits.

Protected fauna species red-listed under the Red List of South African plants (<http://redlist.sanbi.org/>) as well as species listed under the Mpumalanga Nature Conservation Act, No. 10 of 1998 are protected and require provincial permits.

### 3. IDENTIFICATION OF LISTED SPECIES

The vegetation assessment was conducted throughout the extent of the project area. A total of 72 tree, shrub, herbaceous and graminoid plant species were recorded in the project area during the field assessment. Plants listed in Category 2 or as 'not indigenous' or 'naturalised' according to NEMBA, appear in blue text. Some of the plant species recorded. The list of plant species recorded to is by no means comprehensive, and repeated surveys during different phenological periods not covered, may likely yield up to 20-30% additional flora species for the project area. However, floristic analysis conducted to date is however regarded as a sound representation of the local flora for the project area.

Table 1: Trees, shrub and herbaceous plant species recorded in the project area

Family	Scientific Name	Threat Status (SANBI, 2017)	SA Endemic	NEMBA Category
Acanthaceae	<i>Blepharis subvolubilis</i>	LC	No	
Amaranthaceae	<i>Kyphocarpa angustifolia</i>	LC		



<b>Amaranthaceae</b>	<i>Gomphrena celosioides</i>		Invasive
<b>Anacardiaceae</b>	<i>Lannea schweinfurthii</i>	LC	No
<b>Anacardiaceae</b>	<i>Sclerocarya birrea</i>	LC Protected	
<b>Apocynaceae</b>	<i>Adenium multiflorum</i>	LC Sched 12 Protected	No
<b>Apocynaceae</b>	<i>Sarcostemma viminalis</i>	LC	No
<b>Asparagaceae</b>	<i>Asparagus cooperi</i>	LC	
<b>Asteraceae</b>	<i>Geigeria acaulis</i>	LC	No
<b>Asteraceae</b>	<i>Geigeria burkei</i>		
<b>Asteraceae</b>	<i>Pechuel-Loeschea leubnitziae</i>	LC	No
<b>Asteraceae</b>	<i>Flaveria bidentis</i>		
<b>Boraginaceae</b>	<i>Cordia grandicalyx</i>	LC	No
<b>Boraginaceae</b>	<i>Cordia monoica</i>	LC	No
<b>Burseraceae</b>	<i>Commiphora africana</i>		
<b>Burseraceae</b>	<i>Commiphora edulis</i>		
<b>Burseraceae</b>	<i>Commiphora glandulosa</i>		
<b>Burseraceae</b>	<i>Commiphora mollis</i>		
<b>Burseraceae</b>	<i>Commiphora pyracanthoides</i>		
<b>Burseraceae</b>	<i>Commiphora schimperi</i>		
<b>Caesalpiniaceae</b>	<i>Colophospermum mopane</i>	LC	
<b>Caesalpiniaceae</b>	<i>Cassia abbreviata</i>	LC	No
<b>Caesalpiniaceae</b>	<i>Colophospermum mopane</i>	LC	No
<b>Capparaceae</b>	<i>Boscia foetida</i>	LC	No
<b>Capparaceae</b>	<i>Boscia albitrunca</i>	LC Protected	
<b>Celastraceae</b>	<i>Gymnosporia buxifolia</i>	LC	No
<b>Combretaceae</b>	<i>Terminalia prunioides</i>	LC	
<b>Combretaceae</b>	<i>Combretum apiculatum</i>	LC	
<b>Combretaceae</b>	<i>Combretum apiculatum</i>	LC	No
<b>Convolvulaceae</b>	<i>Evolvulus alsinoides</i>	LC	
<b>Euphorbiaceae</b>	<i>Euphorbia tirucalli</i>	LC	No
<b>Euphorbiaceae</b>	<i>Phyllanthus reticulatus</i>	LC	No
<b>Fabaceae</b>	<i>Dichrostachys cinerea</i>		
<b>Fabaceae</b>	<i>Senegalia erubescens</i>	LC	
<b>Fabaceae</b>	<i>Senegalia mellifera</i>	LC	
<b>Fabaceae</b>	<i>Senegalia nigrescens</i>	LC	
<b>Fabaceae</b>	<i>Tephrosia polystachya</i>	LC	No
<b>Fabaceae</b>	<i>Vachellia grandicornuta</i>	LC	
<b>Fabaceae</b>	<i>Vachellia karroo</i>	LC	
<b>Fabaceae</b>	<i>Vachellia tortilis</i>	LC	
<b>Kirkiaceae</b>	<i>Kirkia acuminata</i>	LC	No

<b>Lamiaceae</b>	<i>Ocimum americanum</i>	LC	
<b>Loganiaceae</b>	<i>Strychnos madagascariensis</i>	LC	No
<b>Malvaceae</b>	<i>Adansonia digitata</i>	LC Protected	
<b>Malvaceae</b>	<i>Grewia flava</i>	LC	No
<b>Malvaceae</b>	<i>Grewia flavescens</i>	LC	No
<b>Malvaceae</b>	<i>Grewia villosa</i>	LC	No
<b>Malvaceae</b>	<i>Grewia bicolor</i>	LC	No
<b>Malvaceae</b>	<i>Grewia monticola</i>	LC	No
<b>Malvaceae</b>	<i>Cienfuegosia digitata</i>	LC	No
<b>Malvaceae</b>	<i>Hermannia modesta</i>	LC	No
<b>Meliaceae</b>	<i>Melia azedarach</i>	NE	
<b>Ochnaceae</b>	<i>Ochna pulchra</i>	LC	No
<b>Olacaceae</b>	<i>Ximenia americana</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Aristida stipitata</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Cynodon dactylon</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Enneapogon cenchroides</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Eragrostis lehmanniana</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Panicum maximum</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Schmidtia pappophoroides</i>		No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Aristida congesta</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Eragrostis rigidior</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Stipagrostis uniplumis</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Melinis nerviglumis</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Eragrostis rotifer</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Digitaria eriantha</i>	LC	No
<b>Poaceae</b>	<i>Chloris roxburghiana</i>	LC	No
<b>Rhamnaceae</b>	<i>Ziziphus mucronata</i>		
<b>Ruscaceae</b>	<i>Sansevieria aethiopica</i>	LC	
<b>Sterculiaceae</b>	<i>Sterculia rogersii</i>	LC	No
<b>Tiliaceae</b>	<i>Corchorus asplenifolius</i>	LC	No
<b>Zygophyllaceae</b>	<i>Balanites pedicellaris</i>	LC	

#### 4. MITIGATION & AVOIDANCE OPTIONS

The primary mitigation and avoidance measure that must be implemented at the pre-construction phase is the Pre-construction Walk-Through of the development footprint. This defines which and how many individuals of listed and protected species are found within the development footprint. This information is required for the DFFE and The Mpumalanga Nature Conservation Act, No. 10 of 1998 permits which must be obtained before construction can commence.

Where listed species fall within the development footprint and avoidance is not possible, then it may be possible to translocate the affected individuals outside of the development footprint. However, not all species are suitable for translocation as only certain types of plants are able to survive the disturbance. Suitable candidates for translocation include most geophytes and succulents. Although there are exceptions, the majority of woody species do not survive translocation well and it is generally not recommended to try and attempt to translocate such species. Recommendations in this regard would be made following the walk-through of the facility footprint before construction, where all listed and protected species within the development footprint will be identified and located.

## **5. RESCUE AND PROTECTION PLAN**

### **5.1. Pre-construction**

- » Identification of all listed species which may occur within the site, based on the SANBI POSA database as well as the specialist studies for the site and any other relevant literature.
- » Before construction commences at the site, the following actions should be taken:
  - A walk-through of the final development footprint by a suitably qualified botanist/ecologist to locate and identify all listed and protected species which fall within the development footprint. This should happen during the flowering season at the site which, depending on rainfall, is likely to be during spring to early summer (August-October).
  - A walk-through report following the walk-through which identifies areas where minor deviations to roads and other infrastructure can be made to avoid sensitive areas and important populations of listed species must be compiled. The report should also contain a full list of localities where listed species occur within the development footprint and the number of affected individuals in each instance, so that this information can be used to comply with the permit conditions required by the relevant legislation. Those species suitable for search as rescue should be identified in the walk-through report.
  - A permit to clear the site and relocate species of concern is required from the Mpumalanga provincial conservation authority before construction commences.
  - A tree clearing permit is also required from DFFE to clear protected trees from the site (if recorded).
  - Once the permits have been issued, there should be a search and rescue operation of all listed species that cannot be avoided, which have been identified in the walk-through report as being suitable for search and rescue within the development footprint. Affected individuals should be translocated to a similar habitat outside of the development footprint and marked for monitoring purposes.

### **5.2. Construction**

- » Vegetation clearing should take place in a phased manner, so that large cleared areas are not left standing with no activity for long periods of time and pose a wind and water erosion risk. This will require coordination between the contractor and EO, to ensure that the EO is able to monitor activities appropriately.
- » All cleared material should be handled according to the Revegetation and Rehabilitation Plan and used to encourage the recovery of disturbed areas.
- » The EO should monitor vegetation clearing at the site. Any deviations from the plans that may be required should first be checked for listed species by the EO and any listed species present which are able to survive translocation should be translocated to a safe site.

- » All areas to be cleared should be demarcated with construction tape, survey markers or similar. All construction vehicles should work only within the designated area.
- » Plants suitable for translocation or for use in rehabilitation of already cleared areas should be identified and relocated before general clearing takes place.
- » Any listed species observed within the development footprint that were missed during the pre-construction plant sweeps should be translocated to a safe site before clearing commences.
- » Many listed species are also sought after for traditional medicine or by collectors and so the EO and ECO should ensure that all staff attend environmental induction training in which the legal and conservation aspects of harvesting plants from the wild are discussed.
- » The EO should monitor construction activities in sensitive habitats such as in dune areas carefully to ensure that impacts to these areas are minimised.

### **5.3. Operation**

- » Access to the site should be strictly controlled and all personnel entering or leaving the site should be required to sign in and out with the security officers.
- » The collecting of plants or their parts should be strictly forbidden and signs stating so should be placed at the entrance gates to the site.

## **6. MONITORING & REPORTING REQUIREMENTS**

The following reporting and monitoring requirements are recommended as part of the plant rescue and protection plan:

- » Pre-construction walk-through report detailing the location and distribution of all listed and protected species must be compiled. This should include a walk-through of all infrastructure including all new access roads, cables, buildings and substations. The report should include recommendations of route adjustments where necessary, as well as provide a full account of how many individuals of each listed species will be impacted by the development. Details of plants suitable for search and rescue must also be included.
- » Permit applications to DEA&DP and DFFE. This requires the walk-through report as well as the identification and quantification of all listed and protected species within the development footprint. The permit is required before any search and rescue or vegetation clearance can take place. Where large numbers of listed species are affected, a site inspection and additional requirements may be imposed by DEA&DP and DFFE as part of the permit conditions. All documentation associated with this process needs to be retained and the final clearing permit should be kept at the site.
- » Active daily monitoring of clearing during construction by the EO must be undertaken to ensure that listed species and sensitive habitats are avoided. All incidents should be recorded along with the remedial measures implemented.
- » Post construction monitoring of plants translocated during search and rescue to evaluate the success of the intervention. Monitoring for a year post-transplant should be sufficient to gauge success.

**APPENDIX F:**  
**TRAFFIC AND TRANSPORTATION MANAGEMENT PLAN**

## PRINCIPLES FOR TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT

---

### 1. PURPOSE

The purpose of this Traffic Management Plan (TMP) is to address regulatory compliance, traffic management practices, and protection measures to help reduce impacts related to transportation and the construction of temporary and long-term access within the vicinity of the Mutsho Solar PV4 project site. The objectives of this plan include the following:

- » To ensure compliance with all legislation regulating traffic and transportation within South Africa (National, Provincial, Local & associated guidelines).
- » To avoid incidents and accidents while vehicles are being driven and while transporting personnel, materials, and equipment to and from the project site.
- » To raise greater safety awareness in each driver and to ensure the compliance of all safe driving provisions for all the vehicles.
- » To raise awareness to ensure drivers respect and follow traffic regulations.
- » To avoid the deterioration of access roads and the pollution that can be created due to noise and emissions produced by equipment, machinery, and vehicles.

### 2. TRAFFIC AND TRANSPORTATION MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES

- » Prior to the commencement of construction the contractor must develop their own detailed Transport Management Plan (TMP) based on traffic volumes and road carry capacity outlines in this plan
- » The transport contractor must ensure that all required permits for the transportation of abnormal loads are in place prior to the transportation of equipment and project components to the site. Specific abnormal load routes must be developed with environmental factors taken into consideration.
- » Before construction commences, authorised access routes must be clearly marked in the field with signs or flagging. The Construction Contractor must review the location of designated access and will be responsible for ensuring construction travel is limited to designated routes. The entrance of the main access road must not be constructed before a blind rise or on a bend of the public road.
- » All employees must attend an environmental training program (e.g. toolbox talks) by the Environmental Officer (EO). Through this program, employees will be instructed to use only approved access roads, drive within the delineated road limits, and obey jurisdictional and posted speed limits to minimise potential impacts to the environment and other road users.
- » The contractor will be responsible for making sure that their suppliers, vendors, and subcontractors strictly comply with the principles of this TMP and the contractor's TMP.
- » Adjacent landowners must be notified of the construction schedule.
- » Access roads and entrances to the site should be carefully planned to limit any intrusion on the neighbouring property owners and road users.
- » Signs must be posted in the project area to notify landowners and others of the construction activity.
- » Flagging must be provided at access points to the site and must be maintained until construction is completed on the site.
- » Speed limits must be established prior to commencement of construction and enforced over all construction traffic.
- » Speed controls and implementation of appropriate dust suppression measures must be enforced to minimise dust pollution.

- » Throughout construction the contractor will be responsible for monitoring the condition of roads used by project traffic and for ensuring that roads are maintained in a condition that is comparable to the condition they were in before the construction began.
- » Drivers must have an appropriate valid driver's license and other operation licences required by applicable legislation.
- » All vehicles must be maintained in good mechanical, electrical, and electronic condition, including but not limited to the brake systems, steering, tires, windshield wipers, side mirrors and rear view mirror, safety belts, signal indicators, and lenses.
- » Any traffic delays attributable to construction traffic must be co-ordinated with the appropriate authorities.
- » No deviation from approved transportation routes must be allowed, unless roads are closed for reasons outside the control of the contractor.
- » Impacts on local communities must be minimised. Consideration should be given to limiting construction vehicles travelling on public roadways during the morning and late afternoon commute time.

### **3. MONITORING**

- » The principal contractor must ensure that all vehicles adhere to the speed limits.
- » A speeding register must be kept with details of the offending driver.
- » Repeat offenders must be penalised.
- » Where traffic signs are not being adhered to, engineering structures must be used to ensure speeds are reduced.

**APPENDIX G:**  
**STORMWATER AND EROSION MANAGEMENT PLAN**



# STORMWATER AND EROSION MANAGEMENT PLAN

---

## 1. PURPOSE

By taking greater cognisance of natural hydrological patterns and processes it is possible to develop storm water management systems in a manner that reduces potentially negative impacts and mimics nature. The main risks associated with inappropriate storm water management are increased erosion risk and risks associated with flooding. Therefore, this Storm water Management Plan and the Erosion Management Plan are closely linked to one another and should be managed together.

This Storm water Management Plan addresses the management of storm water runoff from the development site and significant impacts relating to resultant impacts such as soil erosion and downstream sedimentation. The main factors influencing the planning of storm water management measures and infrastructure are:

- » Topography and slope gradients;
- » Placing of infrastructure and infrastructure design;
- » Annual average rainfall; and
- » Rainfall intensities.

The objective of the plan is therefore to provide measures to address runoff from disturbed portions of the site, such that they:

- » Do not result in concentrated flows into natural watercourses i.e. provision should be made for temporary or permanent measures that allow for attenuation, control of velocities and capturing of sediment upstream of natural watercourses.
- » Do not result in any necessity for concrete or other lining of natural watercourses to protect them from concentrated flows off the development if not necessary.
- » Do not divert flows out of their natural flow pathways, thus depriving downstream watercourses of water.

This Storm water Management Plan must be updated and refined once the construction/ civil engineering plans have been finalised following detailed design.

## 2. RELEVANT ASPECTS OF THE SITE

The slope percentage of the project area has been calculated. Most of the project area is characterised by a slope percentage between 0 and 10%, with some smaller patches within the project area characterised by a slope percentage in excess of 12%. This illustration indicates a uniform topography with a relatively 'flat' landscape. The DEM of the project area indicates an elevation of 694 to 748 Metres Above Sea Level (MASL), sloping in a northerly direction.

Freshwater systems were delineated in accordance with the DWAF (2005) guidelines. Based on a combination of desktop and in-field delineation, one (1) form of a watercourse was identified and delineated within the regulated area applied, namely ephemeral drainage lines/ features. Due to the relatively 'flat' topography for the project area, with most of the project area characterised by a slope percentage between 0 and 10%, digital mapping was completed identify watercourse for the area. The drainage lines are classified as a river HGM type system.

The drainage lines are not characterised by riparian vegetation and grasses, these systems represent bare surfaces with evidence of surface run-off.

The recommended buffer was calculated to be 15 m for the drainage lines, for the construction and operational phases.

### **3. STORMWATER MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES**

In the design phase, various storm water management principles should be considered including:

- » Prevent concentration of storm water flow at any point where the ground is susceptible to erosion.
- » Reduce storm water flows as far as possible by the effective use of attenuating devices (such as swales, berms, and silt fences). As construction progresses, the storm water control measures are to be monitored and adjusted to ensure complete erosion and pollution control at all times.
- » Silt traps must be used where there is a danger of topsoil or material stockpiles eroding and entering streams and other sensitive areas.
- » Construction of gabions and other stabilisation features on steep slopes may be undertaken to prevent erosion, if deemed necessary.
- » Minimise the area of exposure of bare soils to minimise the erosive forces of wind, water and all forms of traffic.
- » Ensure that development does not increase the rate of storm water flow above that which the natural ground can safely accommodate at any point in the sub-catchments.
- » Ensure that all storm water control works are constructed in a safe and aesthetic manner in keeping with the overall development.
- » Plan and construct storm water management systems to remove contaminants before they pollute surface waters or groundwater resources.
- » Contain soil erosion, whether induced by wind or water forces, by constructing protective works to trap sediment at appropriate locations. This applies particularly during construction.
- » Avoid situations where natural or artificial slopes may become saturated and unstable, both during and after the construction process.
- » Design and construct roads to avoid concentration of flow along and off the road. Where flow concentration is unavoidable, measures to incorporate the road into the pre-development storm water flow should not exceed the capacity of the culvert. To assist with the storm water run-off, gravel roads should typically be graded and shaped with a 2-3% cross fall back into the slope, allowing storm water to be channelled in a controlled manner towards the, natural drainage lines and to assist with any sheet flow on the site.
- » Design culvert inlet structures to ensure that the capacity of the culvert does not exceed the pre-development storm water flow at that point. Provide detention storage on the road and/or upstream of the storm water culvert.
- » Design outlet culvert structures to dissipate flow energy. Any unlined downstream channel must be adequately protected against soil erosion.
- » Where the construction of a building causes a change in the vegetative cover of the site that might result in soil erosion, the risk of soil erosion by storm water must be minimised by the provision of appropriate artificial soil stabilisation mechanisms or re-vegetation of the area. Any inlet to a piped system should be fitted with a screen or grating to prevent debris and refuse from entering the storm water system.

- » Preferably all drainage channels on site and contained within the larger area of the property (i.e. including buffer zone) should remain in the natural state so that the existing hydrology is not disturbed.

### **3.1. Engineering Specifications**

Detailed engineering specifications for a Storm water Management Plan describing and illustrating the proposed storm water control measures must be prepared by the Civil Engineers during the detailed design phase and should be based on the underlying principles of this Storm water Management Plan. This should include erosion control measures. Requirements for project design include:

- » Erosion control measures to be implemented before and during the construction period, including the final storm water control measures (post construction) must be indicated within the Final/Updated Storm water Management Plan.
- » All temporary and permanent water management structures or stabilisation methods must be indicated within the Final/Updated Storm water Management Plan.
- » The drainage system for the site should be designed to specifications that can adequately deal with a 1:50 year intensity rainfall event or more to ensure sufficient capacity for carrying storm water around and away from infrastructure.
- » Procedures for storm water flow through a project site need to take into consideration both normal operating practice and special circumstances. Special circumstances in this case typically include severe rainfall events.
- » An on-site Engineer or Environmental Officer is to be responsible for ensuring implementation of the erosion control measures on site during the construction period.
- » The EPC Contractor holds ultimate responsibility for remedial action in the event that the approved storm water plan is not correctly or appropriately implemented and damage to the environment is caused.

During the construction phase, the contractor must prepare a Storm water Control Method Statement to ensure that all construction methods adopted on site do not cause, or precipitate soil erosion and shall take adequate steps to ensure that the requirements of the Storm water Management Plan are met before, during and after construction. The designated responsible person on site, must be indicated in the Storm water Control Method Statement and shall ensure that no construction work takes place before the relevant storm water control measures are in place.

An operation phase Storm water Management Plan should be designed and implemented if not already addressed by the mitigations implemented as part of construction, with a view to preventing the passage of concentrated flows off hardened surfaces and onto natural areas.

## **4. EROSION MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES**

The goals of erosion control during and after construction at the site should be to:

- » Protect the land surface from erosion;
- » Intercept and safely direct run-off water from undisturbed upslope areas through the site without allowing it to cause erosion within the site or become contaminated with sediment; and
- » Progressively revegetate or stabilise disturbed areas.

These goals can be achieved by applying the management practices outlined in the following sections.

#### 4.1. On-Site Erosion Management

Soil erosion is a frequent risk associated with developments such as the solar energy facility on account of the vegetation clearing and disturbance associated with the construction phase of the development and may continue occurring throughout the operation phase. Service roads and installed infrastructure will generate increased direct runoff during intense rainfall events and may exacerbate the loss of topsoil and the effects of erosion. These eroded materials may enter the nearby watercourses and may potentially impact these systems through siltation and change in chemistry and turbidity of the water. General factors to consider regarding erosion risk at the site includes the following:

- » Due to the sandy nature of soils in the study area, soil loss will be greater during dry periods as it is more prone to wind erosion. Therefore, precautions to prevent erosion should be present throughout the year.
- » Reduction of a stable vegetation cover and associated below-ground biomass that currently increases soil surface porosity, water infiltration rates and thus improves the soil moisture availability. Without the vegetation, the soil will be prone to extensive surface capping, leading to accelerated erosion and further loss of organic material and soil seed reserves from the local environment.
- » Soil loss is related to the length of time that soils are exposed prior to rehabilitation or stabilisation. Therefore, the gap between construction activities and rehabilitation should be minimised. Phased construction and progressive rehabilitation, where practically possible, are therefore important elements of the erosion control strategy.
- » The extent of disturbance will influence the risk and consequences of erosion. Therefore, site clearing should be restricted to areas required for construction purposes only. As far as possible, large areas should not be cleared all at once, especially in areas where the risk of erosion is higher.
- » Roads should be planned and constructed in a manner which minimises their erosion potential. Roads should therefore follow the natural contour as far as possible. Roads parallel to the slope direction should be avoided as far as possible.
- » Where necessary, new roads constructed should include water diversion structures with energy dissipation features present to slow and disperse the water into the receiving area.
- » Roads used for project-related activities and other disturbed areas should be regularly monitored for erosion. Any erosion problems recorded should be rectified as soon as possible and monitored thereafter to ensure that they do not re-occur.
- » Runoff may have to be specifically channelled or storm water adequately controlled to prevent localised rill and gully erosion.
- » Compacted areas should have adequate drainage systems to avoid pooling and surface flow. Heavy machinery should not compact those areas which are not intended to be compacted as this will result in compacted hydrophobic, water repellent soils which increase the erosion potential of the area. Where compaction does occur, the areas should be ripped.
- » All bare areas should be revegetated with appropriate locally occurring species, to bind the soil and limit erosion potential.
- » Silt fences should be used where there is a danger of topsoil or material stockpiles eroding and entering streams and other sensitive areas.
- » Gabions and other stabilisation features must be used on steep slopes and other areas vulnerable to erosion to minimise erosion risk as far as possible.
- » Activity at the site after large rainfall events when the soils are wet and erosion risk is increased should be reduced. No driving off of hardened roads should occur at any time, and particularly immediately following large rainfall events.
- » Topsoil should be removed and stored in a designated area separately from subsoil and away from construction activities (as per the recommendations in the EMPr). Topsoil should be reapplied where

appropriate as soon as possible in order to encourage and facilitate rapid regeneration of the natural vegetation in cleared areas.

- » Regular monitoring of the site for erosion problems during construction (on-going) and operation (at least twice annually) is recommended, particularly after large summer thunderstorms have been experienced. The ECO will determine the frequency of monitoring based on the severity of the impacts in the erosion prone areas.

#### **4.1.1 Erosion control mechanisms**

The contractor may use the following mechanisms (whichever proves more appropriate/ effective) to combat erosion when necessary:

- » Reno mattresses;
- » Slope attenuation;
- » Hessian material;
- » Shade catch nets;
- » Gabion baskets;
- » Silt fences;
- » Storm water channels and catch pits;
- » Soil bindings;
- » Geofabrics;
- » Hydro-seeding and/or re-vegetating;
- » Mulching over cleared areas;
- » Boulders and size varied rocks; and
- » Tilling.

#### **4.2. Engineering Specifications**

A detailed engineering specifications Storm water Management Plan describing and illustrating the proposed stormwater control measures must be prepared by the Civil Engineers during the detailed design phase and should be based on the underlying principles of the Storm water Management Plan and this should include erosion control measures. Requirements for project design include:

- » Erosion control measures to be implemented before and during the construction period, including the final storm water control measures (post construction).
- » All temporary and permanent water management structures or stabilisation methods must be indicated within the Storm water Management Plan.
- » An on-site Engineer or Environmental Officer (EO)/ SHE Representative to be responsible for ensuring implementation of the erosion control measures on site during the construction period. The ECO should monitor the effectiveness of these measures on the interval agreed upon with the Site Manager and EO.
- » The EPC Contractor holds ultimate responsibility for remedial action in the event that the approved Storm water Management Plan is not correctly or appropriately implemented and damage to the environment is caused.

#### **4.3 Monitoring**

The site must be monitored continuously during construction and operation in order to determine any indications of erosion. If any erosion features are recorded as a result of the activities on-site the Environmental Officer (EO)/ SHE Representative (during construction) or Environmental Manager (during operation) must:

- » Assess the significance of the situation.
- » Take photographs of the soil degradation.
- » Determine the cause of the soil erosion.
- » Inform the contractor/operator that rehabilitation must take place and that the contractor/operator is to implement a rehabilitation method statement and management plan to be approved by the Site/Environmental Manager in conjunction with the ECO.
- » Monitor that the contractor/operator is taking action to stop the erosion and assist them where needed.
- » Report and monitor the progress of rehabilitation weekly and record all the findings in a site register (during construction).
- » All actions with regards to the incidents must be reported on a monthly compliance report which should be kept on file for if/when the Competent Authority requests to see it (during construction) and kept on file for consideration during the annual audits (during construction and operation).

The Contractor (in consultation with an appropriate specialist, e.g. an engineer) must:

- » Select a system/mechanism to treat the erosion.
- » Design and implement the appropriate system/mechanism.
- » Monitor the area to ensure that the system functions like it should. If the system fails, the method must be adapted or adjusted to ensure the accelerated erosion is controlled.
- » Continue monitoring until the area has been stabilised.

## **5. CONCLUSION**

The Erosion Management Plan is a document to assist the Proponent/ EPC Contractor with guidelines on how to manage erosion during all phases of the project. The implementation of management measures is not only good practice to ensure minimisation of degradation, but also necessary to ensure compliance with legislative requirements. This document forms part of the EMPr, and is required to be considered and adhered to during the design, construction, operation and decommissioning phases of the project (if and where applicable). During the construction phase, the contractor must prepare an Erosion Control Method Statement to ensure that all construction methods adopted on site do not cause, or precipitate soil erosion and shall take adequate steps to ensure that the requirements of this plan are met before, during and after construction. The designated responsible person on site, must be indicated in the Method Statement and shall ensure that relevant erosion control measures are in place throughout the construction phase.

An operation phase Erosion Management Plan should be designed and implemented if not already addressed by the mitigations implemented as part of construction, with a view to preventing the passage of concentrated flows off hardened surfaces and onto natural areas.

**APPENDIX H:**  
**WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN**



# WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

---

## 1. PURPOSE

A Waste Management Plan (WMP) plays a key role in achieving sustainable waste management throughout all phases of the project. The plan prescribes measures for the collection, temporary storage and safe disposal of the various waste streams associated with the project and includes provisions for the recovery, re-use and recycling of waste. The purpose of this plan is therefore to ensure that effective procedures are implemented for the handling, storage, transportation and disposal of waste generated from the project activities on site.

This WMP has been compiled as part of the project EMPr and is based on waste stream information available at the time of compilation. Construction and operation activities must be assessed on an ongoing basis in order to determine the efficacy of the plan and whether further revision of the plan is required. This plan should be updated should further detail regarding waste quantities and categorisation become available, during the construction and/or operation stages.

## 2. RELEVANT ASPECTS OF THE SITE

It is expected that the development of Mutsho Solar PV4 will generate construction solid waste, general waste and hazardous waste during the lifetime of the solar farm.

Waste generated on site, originates from various sources, including but not limited to:

- » Concrete waste generated from spoil and excess concrete.
- » Contaminated water, soil, rocks and vegetation due to hydrocarbon spills.
- » Hazardous waste from vehicle, equipment and machinery parts and servicing, fluorescent tubes, used hydrocarbon containers, and waste ink cartridges.
- » Recyclable waste in the form of paper, glass, steel, aluminium, wood/ wood pallets, plastic (PET bottles, PVC, LDPE) and cardboard.
- » Organic waste from food waste as well as alien and endemic vegetation removal.
- » Sewage from portable toilets and septic tanks.
- » Inert waste from spoil material from site clearance and trenching works.

## 3. LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Waste in South Africa is currently governed by several regulations, including:

- » National Environmental Management: Waste Act (NEM:WA), 2008 (Act 59 of 2008);
- » National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 26 of 2014);
- » The South African Constitution (Act 108 of 1996);
- » Hazardous Substances Act (Act 5 of 1973);
- » Health Act (Act 63 of 1977);
- » Environment Conservation Act (Act 73 of 1989);
- » Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993);
- » National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998);
- » The National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (as amended);



- » Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998);
- » Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000);
- » Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002); and
- » Air Quality Act (Act 39 of 2004).

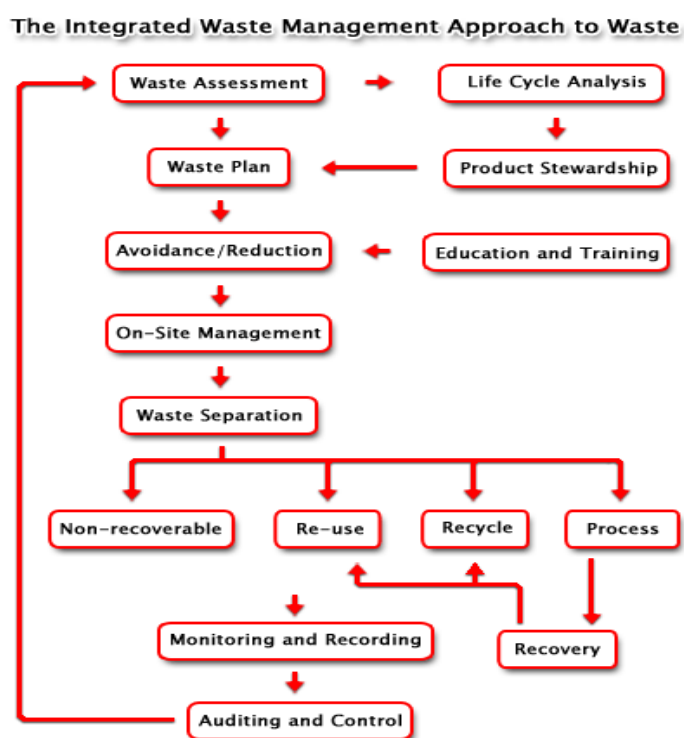
Storage of waste must be conducted in accordance with the National Norms and Standards for the Storage of Waste, published in GNR 926.

#### 4. WASTE MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES

An integrated approach to waste management is needed on site. Such an approach is illustrated in **Figure 1**.

It is important to ensure that waste is managed with the following objectives in mind during all phases of the project:

- » Reducing volumes of waste is the greatest priority;
- » If reduction is not feasible, the maximum amount of waste is to be recycled; and
- » Waste that cannot be recycled is to be disposed of in the most environmentally responsible manner.



**Figure 1: Integrated Waste Management Flow Diagram**

(Source: <http://www.enviroserv.co.za/pages/content.asp?SectionId=496>)

#### **4.1. Construction phase**

A plan for the management of waste during the construction phase is detailed below. A Method Statement detailing specific waste management practices during construction should be prepared by the Contractor prior to the commencement of construction, for approval by the Resident Engineer and/or ECO.

##### **4.1.1. Waste Assessment / Inventory**

- » The Environmental Officer (EO), or designated staff member, must develop, implement and maintain a waste inventory reflecting all waste generated during construction for both general and hazardous waste streams.
- » Construction methods and materials should be carefully considered in view of waste reduction, re-use, and recycling opportunities, to be pro-actively implemented.
- » Once a waste inventory has been established, targets for the recovery of waste (minimisation, re-use, recycling) should be set.
- » The EO must conduct waste classification and rating in terms of SANS 10288 and Government Notice 634 published under the NEM: WA.

##### **4.1.2. Waste collection, handling and storage**

- » It is the responsibility of the EO to ensure that each subcontractor implements their own waste recycling system, i.e. separate bins for food waste, plastics, paper, wood, glass cardboard, metals, etc. Such practises must be made contractually binding upon appointment of the subcontractors.
- » Waste manifests and waste acceptance approvals (i.e. receipts) from designated waste facilities must be kept on file at the site office, in order to record and prove continual compliance for future auditing.
- » Septic tanks and portable toilets must be monitored by the EO or responsible subcontractor and maintained regularly. Below ground storage of septic tanks must withstand the external forces of the surrounding environment. The area above the tank must be demarcated to prevent any vehicles or heavy machinery from moving around in the surrounding area.
- » Waste collection bins and hazardous waste containers must be provided by the principal contractor and subcontractors and placed at strategic locations around the site for the storage of organic, recyclable and hazardous waste.
- » A dedicated waste area must be established on site for the storage of all waste streams before removal from site. The storage period must not trigger listed waste activities as per the NEMWA, GN 921 of November 2013.
- » Signage/ colour coding must be used to differentiate disposal areas for the various waste streams (i.e. paper, cardboard, metals, food waste, glass etc.).
- » Hazardous waste must be stored within a bunded area constructed according to SABS requirements, and must ensure complete containment of the spilled material in the event of a breach. As such, appropriate bunding material, design, capacity and type must be utilised to ensure that no contamination of the surrounding environment will occur despite a containment breach. The net capacity of a bunded compound in a storage facility should be at least 120% of the net capacity of the largest tank.
- » Take into consideration the capacity displaced by other tanks within the same bunded area and any foundations.
- » Treat interconnected tanks as a single tank of equivalent total volume for the purposes of the bund design criteria

- » The location of all temporary waste storage areas must aim to minimise the potential for impact on the surrounding environment, including prevention of contaminated runoff, seepage, and vermin control, while being reasonably placed in terms of centrality and accessibility on site. Where required, an additional temporary waste storage area may be designated, provided identical controls are exercised for these locations.
- » Waste storage shall be in accordance with all Regulations and best-practice guidelines and under no circumstances may waste be burnt on site.
- » A dedicated waste management team must be appointed by the principal contractors' SHE Officer, who will be responsible for ensuring the continuous sorting of waste and maintenance of the area. The waste management team must be trained in all areas of waste management and monitored by the SHE Officer.
- » All waste removed from site must be done by a registered/ licensed subcontractor, who must supply information regarding how waste recycling/ disposal will be achieved. The registered subcontractor must provide waste manifests for all removals at least once a month or for every disposal made, records of which must be kept on file at the site camp for the duration of the construction period.

#### **4.1.3. Management of waste storage areas**

- » The position of all waste storage areas must be located so as to ensure minimal degradation to the environment. The main waste storage area must have a suitable stormwater system separating clean and contaminated stormwater.
- » Collection bins placed around the site and at subcontractors' camps (if at a different location than the main site camp) must be maintained and emptied on a regular basis by the principal contractor to avoid overflowing receptacles.
- » Inspections and maintenance of the main waste storage area must be undertaken daily. Skips and storage containers must be clearly marked or colour coded and well-maintained. Monitor for rodents and take corrective action if they become a problem.
- » Waste must be stored in designated containers and not on the ground.
- » Inspections and maintenance of bunds must be undertaken regularly. Bunds must be inspected for leaks or cracks in the foundation and walls.
- » It is assumed that any rainwater collected inside the bund is contaminated and must be treated by oil/water separation (or similar method) prior to dewatering, or removed and stored as hazardous waste, and not released into the environment.
- » If any leaks occur in the bund, these must be removed immediately.
- » Bund systems must be designed to avoid dewatering of contaminated water, but to rather separate oil and hydrocarbons from water prior to dewatering.
- » Following rainfall event bunds must always be dewatered in order to maintain a sufficient storage capacity in the event of a breach.
- » No mixing of hazardous and general waste is allowed.

#### **4.1.4. Disposal**

- » Waste generated on site must be removed on a regular basis. This frequency may change during construction depending on waste volumes generated at different stages of the construction process, however removal must occur prior to the storage capacity being reached to avoid overflow of containers and poor waste storage.

- » Waste must be removed by a suitably qualified contractor and disposed of at an appropriately licensed landfill site. Proof of appropriate disposal must be provided by the contractor to the EO and ECO.

#### **4.1.5. Record keeping**

The success of the Waste Management Plan is determined by measuring criteria such as waste volumes, cost recovery from recycling and cost of disposal. Recorded data can indicate the effect of training and education, or the need for education. It will provide trends and benchmarks for setting goals and standards. It will provide clear evidence of the success or otherwise of the plan.

- » Documentation (waste manifest, certificate of issue or safe disposal) must be kept detailing the quantity, nature, and fate of any regulated waste for audit purposes.
- » Waste management must form part of the monthly reporting requirements in terms of volumes generated, types, storage and final disposal.

#### **4.1.6. Training**

Training and awareness regarding waste management shall be provided to all employees and contractors as part of the toolbox talks or on-site awareness sessions with the EO and at the frequency as set out by the ECO.

### **4.2. Operation phase**

It is expected that the operation phase will result in the production of limited amounts of general waste consisting mostly of cardboard, paper, plastic, tins, metals and a variety of synthetic compounds. Hazardous wastes (including grease, oils) will also be generated. All waste generated will be required to be temporarily stored at the facility in appropriate sealed containers prior to disposal at a permitted landfill site or other facilities.

The following waste management principles apply during the operation phase:

- » The SHE Manager must develop, implement and maintain a waste inventory reflecting all waste generated during operation for both general and hazardous waste streams.
- » Adequate waste collection bins at site must be supplied. Separate bins should be provided for general and hazardous waste.
- » Recyclable waste must be removed from the waste stream and stored separately.
- » All waste must be stored in appropriate temporary storage containers (separated between different operation wastes, and contaminated or wet waste).
- » Waste storage shall be in accordance with all best-practice guidelines and under no circumstances may waste be burnt on site.
- » Waste generated on site must be removed on a regular basis throughout the operation phase.
- » Waste must be removed by a suitably qualified contractor and disposed at an appropriately licensed landfill site. Proof of appropriate disposal must be provided by the contractor and kept on site.

## **5. Monitoring of Waste Management Activities**

Records must be kept of the volumes/ mass of the different waste streams that are collected from the site throughout the life of the project. The appointed waste contractor is to provide monthly reports to the operator containing the following information:

- » Monthly volumes/ mass of the different waste streams collected;
- » Monthly volumes/ mass of the waste that is disposed of at a landfill site;
- » Monthly volumes/ mass of the waste that is recycled;
- » Data illustrating progress compared to previous months.

This report will aid in monitoring the progress and relevance of the waste management procedures that are in place. If it is found that the implemented procedures are not as effective as required, this WMP is to be reviewed and amended accordingly. This report must form part of the EO's reports to the ECO on a monthly basis.

**APPENDIX I:**  
**EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS, RESPONSE AND FIRE**  
**MANAGEMENT PLAN**

# EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS, RESPONSE AND FIRE MANAGEMENT PLAN

---

## 1. PURPOSE

The purpose of the Emergency Preparedness and Response Plan is:

- » To assist contractor personnel to prepare for and respond quickly and safely to emergency incidents, and to establish a state of readiness which will enable prompt and effective responses to possible events.
- » To control or limit any effect that an emergency or potential emergency may have on site or on neighbouring areas.
- » To facilitate emergency responses and to provide such assistance on the site as is appropriate to the occasion.
- » To ensure communication of all vital information as soon as possible.
- » To facilitate the reorganisation and reconstruction activities so that normal operations can be resumed.
- » To provide for training so that a high level of preparedness can be continually maintained.

This plan outlines response actions for potential incidents of any size. It details response procedures that will minimise potential health and safety hazards, environmental damage, and clean-up efforts. The plan has been prepared to ensure quick access to all the information required in responding to an emergency event. The plan will enable an effective, comprehensive response to prevent injury or damage to the construction personnel, public, and environment during the project. Contractors are expected to comply with all procedures described in this document. A Method Statement should be prepared at the commencement of the construction phase detailing how this plan is to be implemented as well as details of relevant responsible parties for the implementation. The method statement must also reflect conditions of the IFC Performance Standard 1 and include the following:

- » Identification of areas where accidents and emergency situations may occur;
- » Communities and individuals that may be impacted;
- » Response procedure;
- » Provisions of equipment and resources;
- » Designation of responsibilities;
- » Communication; and
- » Periodic training to ensure effective response to potentially affected communities.

## 2. PROJECT-SPECIFIC DETAILS

The project site has been identified by the applicant as a technically feasible site which has the potential for the development of 100MW Mutsho Solar PV4 and associated infrastructure located near Mopane and Musino in the Vhembe District Municipality, Limpopo Province of South Africa.

The project site has been identified as a technically feasible site which has the potential for the development of a solar facility through the consideration of a number of technical factors. A development area of approximately ~166ha has been identified within the project site by the proponent for the development.

Due to the scale and nature of this development, it is anticipated that the following risks could potentially arise during the construction and operation phases:

- » Fires;
- » Leakage of hazardous substances;
- » Storage of flammable materials and substances;
- » Flood events;
- » Accidents; and
- » Natural disasters.

### **3. EMERGENCY RESPONSE PLAN**

There are three levels of emergency as follows:

- » Local Emergency: An alert confined to a specific locality.
- » Site Emergency: An alert that cannot be localised and which presents danger to other areas within the site boundary or outside the site boundary.
- » Evacuation: An alert when all personnel are required to leave the affected area and assemble in a safe location.

If there is any doubt as to whether any hazardous situation constitutes an emergency, then it must be treated as an Evacuation.

Every effort must be made to control, reduce or stop the cause of any emergency provided it is safe to do so. For example, in the event of a fire, isolate the fuel supply and limit the propagation of the fire by cooling the adjacent areas. Then confine and extinguish the fire (where appropriate) making sure that re-ignition cannot occur.

#### **3.1. Emergency Scenario Contingency Planning**

##### **3.1.1. Scenario: Spill which would result in the contamination of land, surface or groundwater**

###### **i. Spill Prevention Measures**

Preventing spills must be the top priority at all operations which have the potential of endangering the environment. The responsibility to effectively prevent and mitigate any scenario lies with the Contractor and the ECO. In order to reduce the risk of spills and associated contamination, the following principles should be considered during construction and operation activities:

- » All equipment refuelling, servicing and maintenance activities should only be undertaken within appropriately sealed/contained or bunded designated areas.
- » All maintenance materials, oils, grease, lubricants, etc. should be stored in a designated area in an appropriate storage container.
- » No refuelling, storage, servicing, or maintenance of equipment should take place within sensitive environmental resources in order to reduce the risk of contamination by spills.
- » No refuelling or servicing should be undertaken without absorbent material or drip pans properly placed to contain spilled fuel.
- » Any fluids drained from the machinery during servicing should be collected in leak-proof containers and taken to an appropriate disposal or recycling facility.



- » If these activities result in damage or accumulation of product on the soil, the contaminated soil must be disposed of as hazardous waste. Under no circumstances shall contaminated soil be added to a spoils pile and transported to a regular disposal site.
- » Chemical toilets used during construction must be regularly cleaned. Chemicals used in toilets are also hazardous to the environment and must be controlled. Portable chemical toilets could overflow if not pumped regularly or they could spill if dropped or overturned during moving. Care and due diligence should be taken at all times.
- » Contact details of emergency services and HazMat Response Contractors are to be clearly displayed on the site. All staff are to be made aware of these details and must be familiar with the procedures for notification in the event of an emergency.

## **ii. Procedures**

The following action plan is proposed in the event of a spill:

1. Spill or release identified.
2. Assess person safety, safety of others and environment.
3. Stop the spill if safely possible.
4. Contain the spill to limit entering surrounding areas.
5. Identify the substance spilled.
6. Quantify the spill (under or over guideline/threshold levels).
7. Notify the Site Manager and emergency response crew and authorities (in the event of major spill).
8. Inform users (and downstream users) of the potential risk.
9. Clean up of the spill using spill kit or by HazMat team.
10. Record of the spill incident on company database.

### **a) Procedures for containing and controlling the spill (i.e. on land or in water)**

Measures can be taken to prepare for quick and effective containment of any potential spills. Each contractor must keep sufficient supplies of spill containment equipment at the construction sites, at all times during and after the construction phase. These should include specialised spill kits or spill containment equipment. Other spill containment measures include using drip pans underneath vehicles and equipment every time refuelling, servicing, or maintenance activities are undertaken.

Specific spill containment methods for land and water contamination are outlined below.

#### **Containment of Spills on Land**

Spills on land include spills on rock, gravel, soil and/or vegetation. It is important to note that soil is a natural sorbent, and therefore spills on soil are generally less serious than spills on water as contaminated soil can be more easily recovered. It is important that all measures be undertaken to avoid spills reaching open water bodies located outside of the project site. The following methods could be used:

- » **Dykes** - Dykes can be created using soil surrounding a spill on land. These dykes are constructed around the perimeter or down slope of the spilled substance. A dyke needs to be built up to a size that will ensure containment of the maximum quantity of contaminant that may reach it. A plastic tarp can be placed on and at the base of the dyke such that the contaminant can pool up and subsequently be

removed with sorbent materials or by pump into barrels or bags. If the spill is migrating very slowly, a dyke may not be necessary and sorbents can be used to soak up contaminants before they migrate away from the source of the spill.

- » *Trenches* - Trenches can be dug out to contain spills. Spades, pick axes or a front-end loader can be used depending on the size of the trench required. Spilled substances can then be recovered using a pump or sorbent materials.

**b) Procedures for transferring, storing, and managing spill related wastes**

Used sorbent materials are to be placed in plastic bags for future disposal. All materials mentioned in this section are to be available in the spill kits. Following clean up, any tools or equipment used must be properly washed and decontaminated, or replaced if this is not possible.

Spilled substances and materials used for containment must be placed into empty waste oil containers and sealed for proper disposal at an approved disposal facility.

### **c) Procedures for restoring affected areas**

Criteria that may be considered include natural biodegradation of oil, replacement of soil and revegetation. Once a spill of reportable size has been contained, the ECO and the relevant Authority must be consulted to confirm that the appropriate clean up levels are met.

#### **3.1.2. Scenario: Fire (and fire water handling)**

##### **i. Action Plan**

The following action plan is proposed in the event of a fire:

1. Quantify risk.
2. Assess person safety, safety of others and environment.
3. If safe – attempt to extinguish the fire using appropriate equipment.
4. If not safe to extinguish, contain fire.
5. Notify the Site Manager and emergency response crew and authorities.
6. Inform users of the potential risk of fire.
7. Record the incident on the company database or filing register.

##### **ii. Procedures**

Because large scale fires may spread very fast it is most advisable that the employee/contractor not put his/her life in danger in the case of an uncontrolled fire.

Portable firefighting equipment must be provided at strategic locations throughout the site, in line with the Building Code of South Africa and the relevant provincial building code. All emergency equipment including portable fire extinguishers, hose reels and hydrants must be maintained and inspected by a qualified contractor in accordance with the relevant legislation and national standards.

Current evacuation signs and diagrams for the building or site that are compliant to relevant state legislation must be provided in a conspicuous position, on each evacuation route. Contact details for the relevant emergency services should be clearly displayed on site and all employees should be aware of procedures to follow in the case of an emergency.

### **a) Procedures for initial actions**

Persons should not fight the fire if any of the following conditions exist:

- » They have not been trained or instructed in the use of a fire extinguisher.
- » They do not know what is burning.
- » The fire is spreading rapidly.
- » They do not have the proper equipment.
- » They cannot do so without a means of escape.
- » They may inhale toxic smoke.

## **b) Reporting procedures**

In terms of the requirements of NEMA, the responsible person must, within 14 days of the incident, report to the Director General, provincial head of department and municipality.

- » Report fire immediately to the site manager, who will determine if it is to be reported to the relevant emergency services and authorities.
- » The site manager must have copies of the Report form to be completed.

» SUMMARY: RESPONSE PROCEDURE

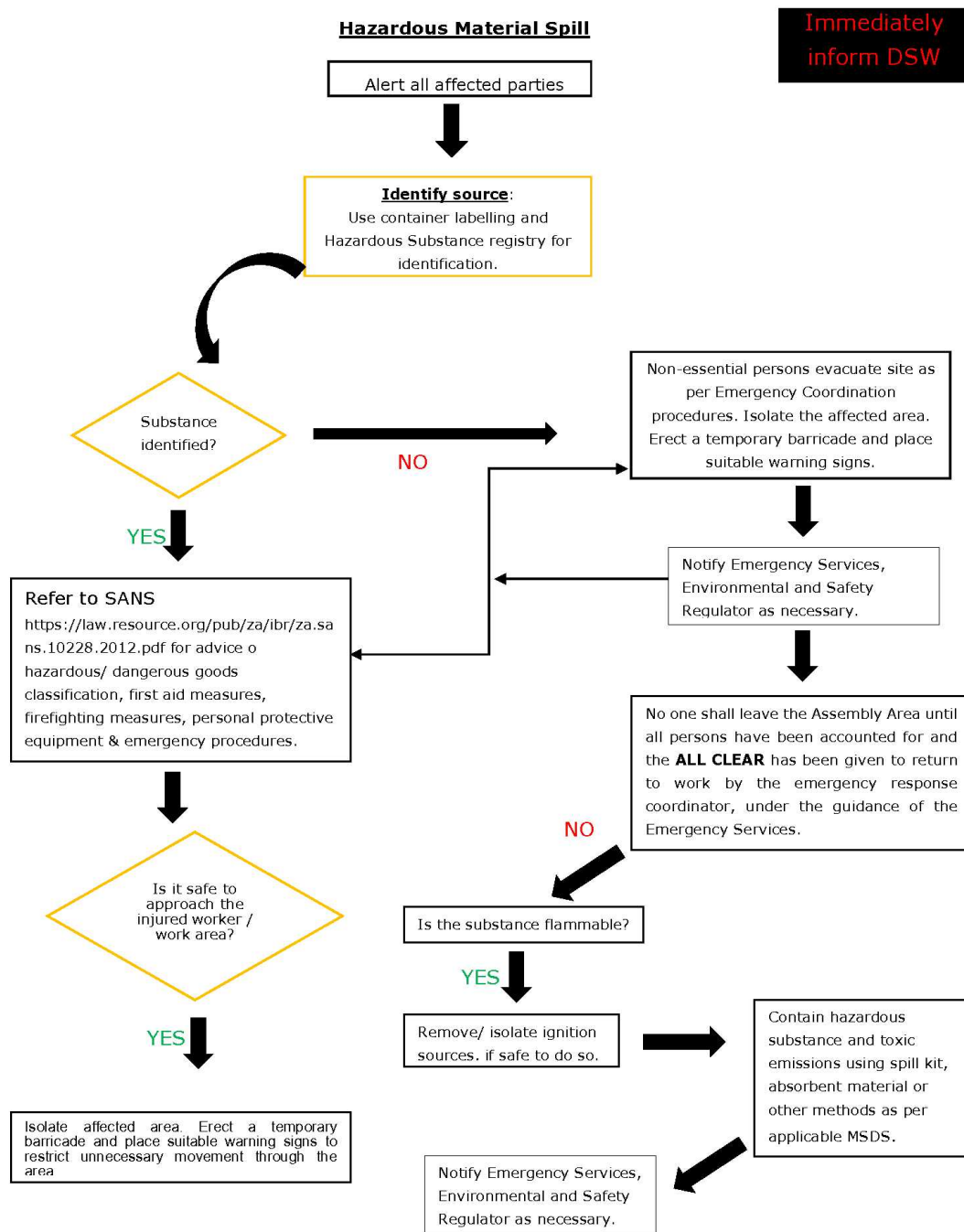
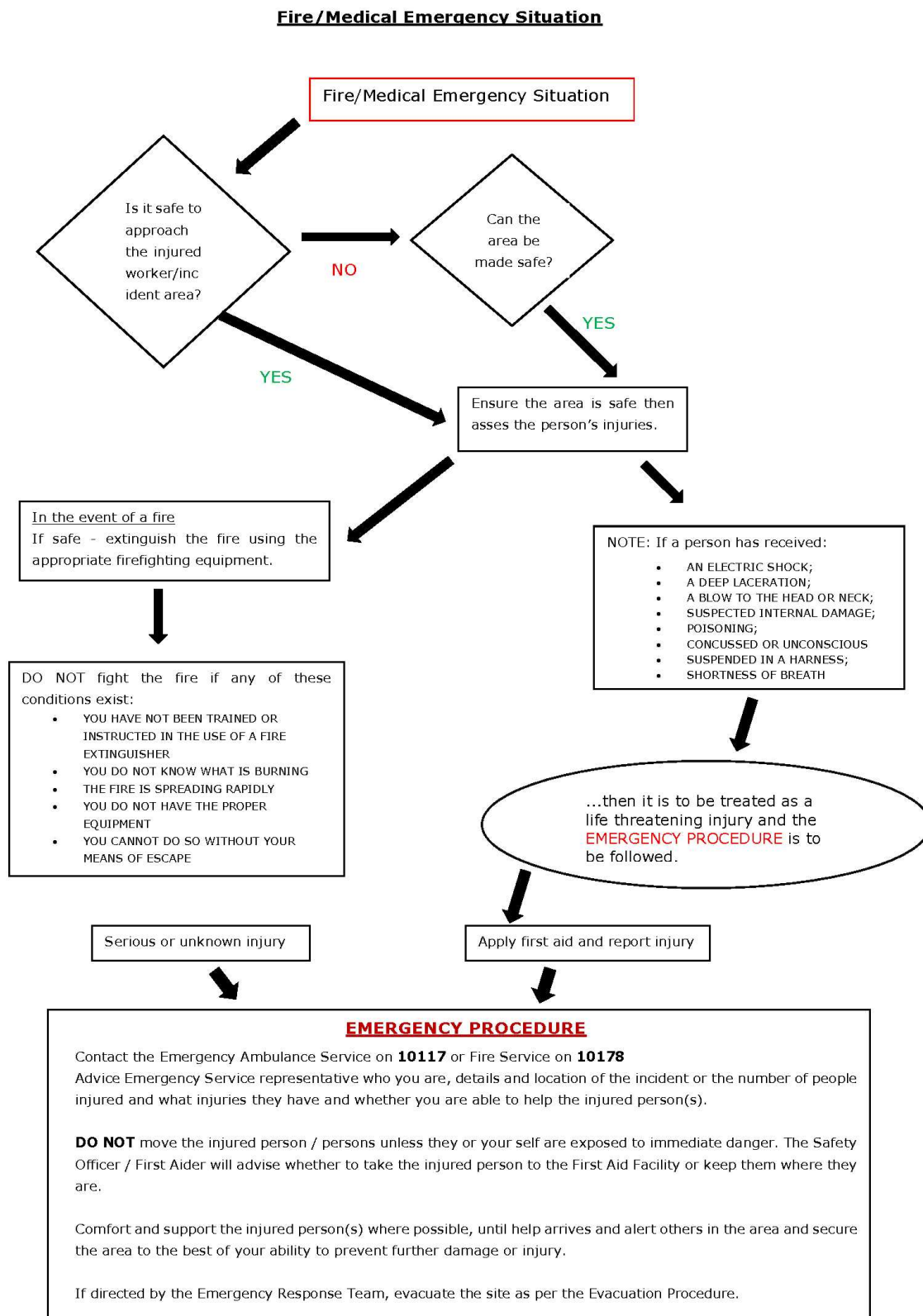


Figure 1: Hazardous Material Spill



**Figure 2:** Emergency Fire/Medical

#### **4. PROCEDURE RESPONSIBILITY**

The Contractor's Safety, Health and Environment (SHE) Representative, employed by the Contractor, is responsible for managing the day-to-day on-site implementation of this Plan, and for the compilation of regular (usually weekly) Monitoring Reports. In addition, the SHE must act as liaison and advisor on all environmental and related issues.

The local authorities will provide their assistance when deemed necessary, or when it has been requested and/or indicated in Section 30 (8) of NEMA. The provincial authority will provide assistance and guidance where required and conduct awareness programmes.

**APPENDIX J:**  
**CHANCE FIND PROCEDURE**



## **HWC PROCEDURE: CHANCE FINDS OF PALAEOLOGICAL MATERIAL**

**June 2016**

### **Introduction**

This document is aimed to inform workmen and foremen working on a construction and/or mining site. It describes the procedure to follow in instances of accidental discovery of palaeontological material (please see attached poster with descriptions of palaeontological material) during construction/mining activities. This protocol does not apply to resources already identified under an assessment undertaken under s. 38 of the National Heritage Resources Act (no 25 of 1999).

Fossils are rare and irreplaceable. Fossils tell us about the environmental conditions that existed in a specific geographical area millions of years ago. As heritage resources that inform us of the history of a place, fossils are public property that the State is required to manage and conserve on behalf of all the citizens of South Africa. Fossils are therefore protected by the National Heritage Resources Act and are the property of the State. Ideally, a qualified person should be responsible for the recovery of fossils noticed during construction/mining to ensure that all relevant contextual information is recorded.

Heritage Authorities often rely on workmen and foremen to report finds, and thereby contribute to our knowledge of South Africa's past and contribute to its conservation for future generations.

### **Training**

Workmen and foremen need to be trained in the procedure to follow in instances of accidental discovery of fossil material, in a similar way to the Health and Safety protocol. A brief introduction to the process to follow in the event of possible accidental discovery of fossils should be conducted by the designated Environmental Control Officer (ECO) for the project, or the foreman or site agent in the absence of the ECO

It is recommended that copies of the attached poster and procedure are printed out and displayed at the site office so that workmen may familiarise themselves with them and are thereby prepared in the event that accidental discovery of fossil material takes place.

### **Actions to be taken**

One person in the staff must be identified and appointed as responsible for the implementation of the attached protocol in instances of accidental fossil discovery and must report to the ECO or site agent. If the ECO or site agent is not present on site, then the responsible person on site should follow the protocol correctly in order to not jeopardize the conservation and well-being of the fossil material.

Once a workman notices possible fossil material, he/she should report this to the ECO or site agent.

**Procedure to follow if it is likely that the material identified is a fossil:**

- i. The ECO or site agent must ensure that all **work ceases** immediately in the vicinity of the area where the fossil or fossils have been found;
- ii. The ECO or site agent must **inform HWC of the find immediately**. This information must include photographs of the findings and GPS co-ordinates;
- iii. The ECO or site agent must compile a **Preliminary Report and fill in the Fossil Discoveries: HWC Preliminary Record Form** within 24 hours without removing the fossil from its original position. The **Preliminary Report** records basic information about the find including:
  - The date
  - A description of the discovery
  - A description of the fossil and its context (e.g. position and depth of find)
  - Where and how the find has been stored
  - Photographs to accompany the preliminary report (the more the better):
    - A scale must be used
    - Photos of location from several angles
    - Photos of vertical section should be provided
    - Digital images of hole showing vertical section (side);
    - Digital images of fossil or fossils.

Upon receipt of this **Preliminary Report**, HWC will inform the ECO or site agent whether or not a rescue excavation or rescue collection by a palaeontologist is necessary.

- v. **Exposed finds must be stabilised where they are unstable and the site capped, e.g. with a plastic sheet or sand bags.** This protection should allow for the later excavation of the finds with due scientific care and diligence. HWC can advise on the most appropriate method for stabilisation.
- vi. If the find cannot be stabilised, **the fossil may be collect with extreme care** by the ECO or the site agent and put aside and protected until HWC advises on further action. Finds collected in this way must be safely and securely stored in tissue paper and an appropriate box. Care must be taken to remove the all fossil material and any breakage of fossil material must be avoided at all costs.

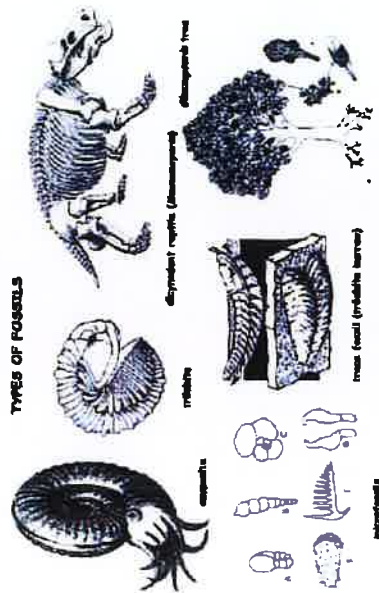
No work may continue in the vicinity of the find until HWC has indicated, in writing, that it is appropriate to proceed.

FOSSIL DISCOVERIES: HWC PRELIMINARY RECORDING FORM		
Name of project:		
Name of fossil location:		
Date of discovery:		
Description of situation in which the fossil was found:		
Description of context in which the fossil was found:		
Description and condition of fossil identified:		
GPS coordinates:	Lat:	Long:
If no co-ordinates available then please describe the location:		
Time of discovery:		
Depth of find in hole		
Photographs (tick as appropriate and indicate number of the photograph)	Digital image of vertical section (side)	
	Fossil from different angles	
	Wider context of the find	
Temporary storage (where it is located and how it is conserved)		
Person Identifying the fossil	Name: Contact:	
Recorder	Name: Contact:	
Photographer	Name: Contact:	

### Palaeontology: what is a fossil?

Fossils are the traces of ancient life (animal, plant or microbial) preserved within rocks and come in two forms:

- Body fossils preserve parts, casts or impressions of the original tissues of an organism (e.g. bones, teeth, wood, pollen grains); and
- Trace fossils such as trackways and burrows record ancient animal behaviour.



### How to report chance fossil finds: What should I do if I find a fossil during construction/mining?

If you think you have identified a fossil:

Immediately inform the ECO or Site Agent.  
He/she will then contact HWC and write a report  
and if necessary operations will stop in that  
specific area until the fossil is recovered

Heritage Western Cape  
ceoheritage@westerncape.gov.za  
021 483 5959  
www.hwc.org.za

Erasmus  
Heritage

### Types of palaeontological finding - What does a fossil look like?

Fossils vary in size, from fossilised tree trunks and dinosaur bones down to very small animals or plants. Finds can be **individual fossils** (one isolated wood log or bone) or **clusters and beds** (several bones, teeth, animal or plant remains, trace fossils in close proximity or bones resembling part of a skeleton). A bed of fossils is a layer with many fossil remains.

Below there is a list of few examples of fossils which may be identified during excavations in the Western Cape.

Image	Description	Image	Description
	Leaves		Snail shells and other shells
	Fossil wood		Bones of larger animals
	The remains of fish and marine life (e.g. teeth, scales, starfish)		Large burrows made by moles and other animals
	Stromatolites		Traces made by burrowing insects (ants, wasps, dung-beetles etc.).
	Animal footprints		

Images provided by Dr John Almond  
Text by HWC's Archaeology, Palaeontology & Museum Curator June 2015

